ARTEP 31-807-MTP

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE
SPECIAL FORCES OPERATIONAL DETACHMENT BRAVO (SFODB)

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ARMY TRAINING AND EVALUATION PROGRAM NO. 31-807-MTP	**HEADQUARTERS DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY** Washington, DC, 3 July 1998

MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE SPECIAL FORCES OPERATIONAL
DETACHMENT BRAVO (SFODB)

Table of Contents

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

PREFACE

Special Forces (SF) units operate throughout the operational continuum during war and peacetime operations in a predominantly joint and combined environment. The underlying key to SF mission success is well-trained leaders and soldiers prepared for worldwide commitment with other Services and allies.

Military leaders acknowledge that unit training is the most important training in peacetime. This training prepares a unit to accomplish its critical wartime missions. Unit leaders must attack this job aggressively and consistently to demonstrate ability and to develop unit esprit de corps. The Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) mission training plan (MTP) is the unit leader's basic document for training his unit. It guides him in preparing, conducting, and evaluating his training. Higher headquarters (HQ) as well can use the MTP for external evaluation of a unit's training proficiency.

This MTP gives the SF company commander a descriptive, mission-oriented document to train a Special Forces operational detachment Bravo (SFODB) in critical wartime supporting missions. The SFODB trains for the missions and standards outlined in this MTP. Commanders may make the standards for training more difficult, but they may not lower them. This document is in full alignment with and is part of the United States (U.S.) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP represents a unit at its authorized level of organization. Its concepts and methodologies are applicable to all SFODBs. **All tasks may not apply in all instances,** but all tasks in this MTP are treated as critical. In designing your detachment-specific training strategies, disregard tasks that are not applicable. Because of the generic nature of this MTP, many of the task standards are subjective in nature. Successful final outcomes are situationally dependent. Subjective standards guide final outcomes and can be refined to more exacting standards. Trainers or evaluators using the MTP can develop increased detail in the standards based upon unit standing operating procedures (SOPs) and the commander's guidance.

This MTP is in accordance with (IAW), and is a part of, the U.S. Army's training philosophy and management doctrine in Field Manual (FM) 25-100 and FM 25-101. The tactical doctrine is in Joint Pubs 3-05.3 and 3-05.5, FM 100-25, and FM 31-20. It contains the specific mission planning guidelines and tasks described in those tactical doctrinal manuals and the collective standards required for proficiency in those tasks.

The structure of this manual conforms to a continental United States (CONUS)-based, force projection army, as outlined in FM 100-5. The focus is on the SFODB commander's ability to respond and commit forces on short notice to action anywhere in the world, with emphasis on the supported theater commander in chief's (CINC's) area of responsibility (AOR). The SFODB commander must, therefore, be prepared to employ his detachment in diverse and varied situations throughout his AOR. Such mission directives may result from operation plans (OPLANs) or contingency plans (CONPLANs) or from unforeseen events or conditions.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). The preparing agency is the U.S. Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School (USAJFKSWCS). Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028. Forward all suggestions to Commander, U.S. Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School, ATTN: AOJK-DT-SF, Fort Bragg, NC, 28307-5000.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. General. This MTP is for use by the SFODB. Figure 1-1 shows the organization of the SF company under table of organization and equipment (TOE) 31-807L000. The SFODB is the SF company HQ (Figure 1-2). The
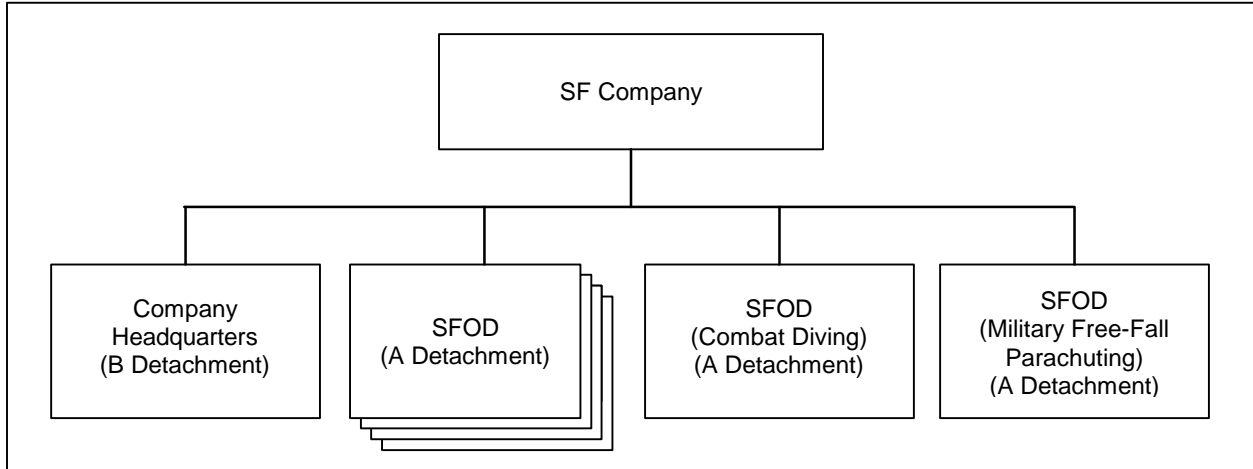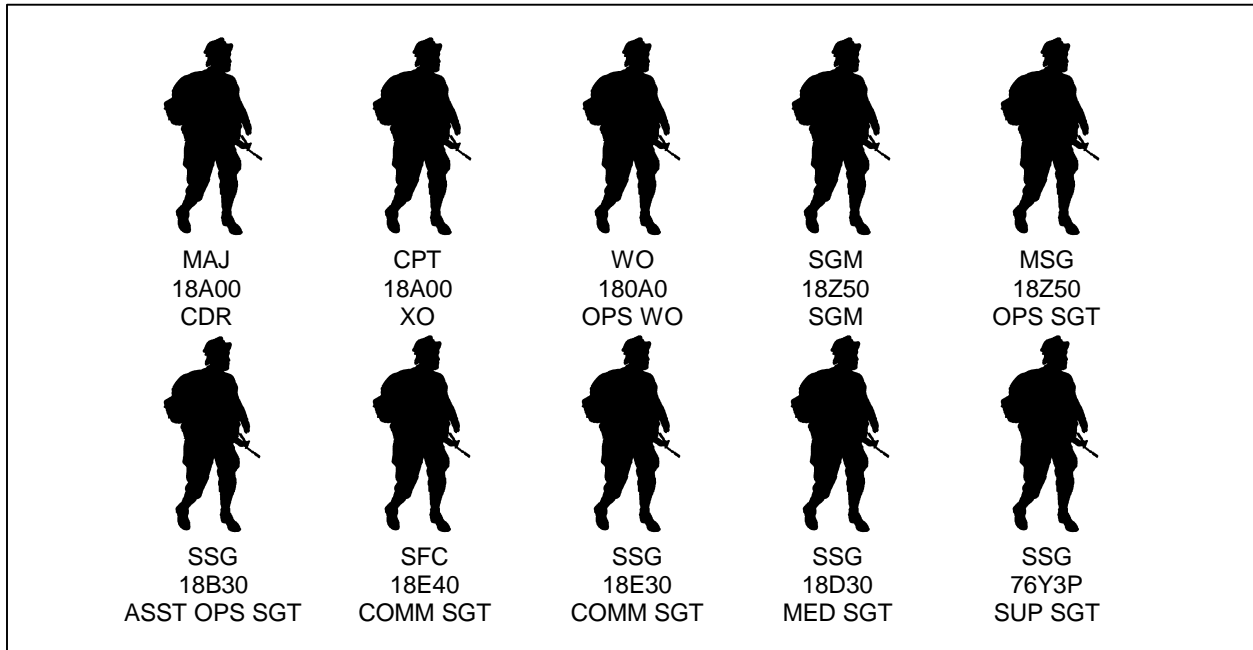
Figure 1-1. SF company under TOE 31-807L000.

Figure 1-2. SFODB organization.

SFODB plans and conducts special operations (SO) activities in any operational environment during war and peacetime operations. The SFODB is a multipurpose command and control (C^2) element with various employment options. The emphasis of this MTP is on the supporting missions conducted by the SFODB. This MTP establishes the SFODB's role in the mission planning and execution cycle from the time it receives the warning order (WARNORD) or alert.

    a. The purpose of this ARTEP MTP is to help SFODB commanders develop and implement training programs for their SFODBs. This MTP provides guidance on how to train the unit's supporting missions.

    b. The specific details of a training program depend on many factors, including—

        (1) Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
        (2) Training priorities within the command.
        (3) Available training areas and resources.

    c. Commanders should use this ARTEP MTP when—

        (1) Developing the unit's mission-essential task list (METL).
        (2) Developing training plans.
        (3) Executing training.
        (4) Evaluating training against set standards.

1-2. Standard Army Training System. The standard army training system (SATS) provides powerful automated tools for implementing the training management doctrine in FM 25-100, *Training the Force,* and related manuals. The SATS gives commanders the capability to automate major portions of their training management program. It provides automated tools for mission-essential task list development and for planning, resourcing, and assessing training as part of the training management cycle. The SATS is a keystone Army effort to manage training resources and to support warfighting.

    a. Commanders can implement the SATS to—

        (1) Access relevant training management documents and records, such as MTPs.
        (2) Identify resource requirements for training activities.
        (3) Assist with all analysis inherent to the training management process, such as costs, operating tempo, ammunition, and training facilities.
        (4) Maintain accountability of training resources.
        (5) Prepare and print required schedules, calendars, and reports.
        (6) Access relevant supporting unit training information to train the SF soldier for SO missions (nonproponent FM and ARTEP tasks, individual-related military occupational specialty [MOS] tasks, and battle drills).
        (7) Access relevant training information to support operational requirements (develop programs of instruction [POIs] to help advise and train host nation [HN] and foreign nation [FN] forces).

    b. The SATS is updated as its modules and databases evolve. The first increment of the SATS integrates key management functions that support METL development. Commanders use this system to determine unit training requirements and to plan, resource, and schedule SF missions.

    c. Adapting this MTP to the needs of a particular SF unit is a command responsibility. The company commander uses the SATS to develop a draft METL. He incorporates the MTP METL tasks and develops unique tasks based upon the mission analysis. The commander, at the appropriate level, decides which supporting missions and tasks to train and evaluate. (See FM 25-100.) He bases his decision upon—

        (1) The approved METL.
        (2) The battle tasks selected by his senior commander.

    (3) His own training assessment.

    (4) The training guidance issued by his senior commander.

1-3. Supporting Materials. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program that is part of the next higher echelon's training program. Figure 1-3 illustrates the relationship. The program is supported by U.S. Army SO and SF doctrinal manuals, career management field (CMF) 18 soldier's manuals, and Army officer foundation standards (OFS) (formerly military qualification standards [MQS]) manuals. The unit's training program consists of—

    a. ARTEP 31-805-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Group and Battalion.

    b. ARTEP 31-807-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Operational Detachment Bravo (SFODB).

    c. ARTEP 31-807-30-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Company: Unconventional Warfare.

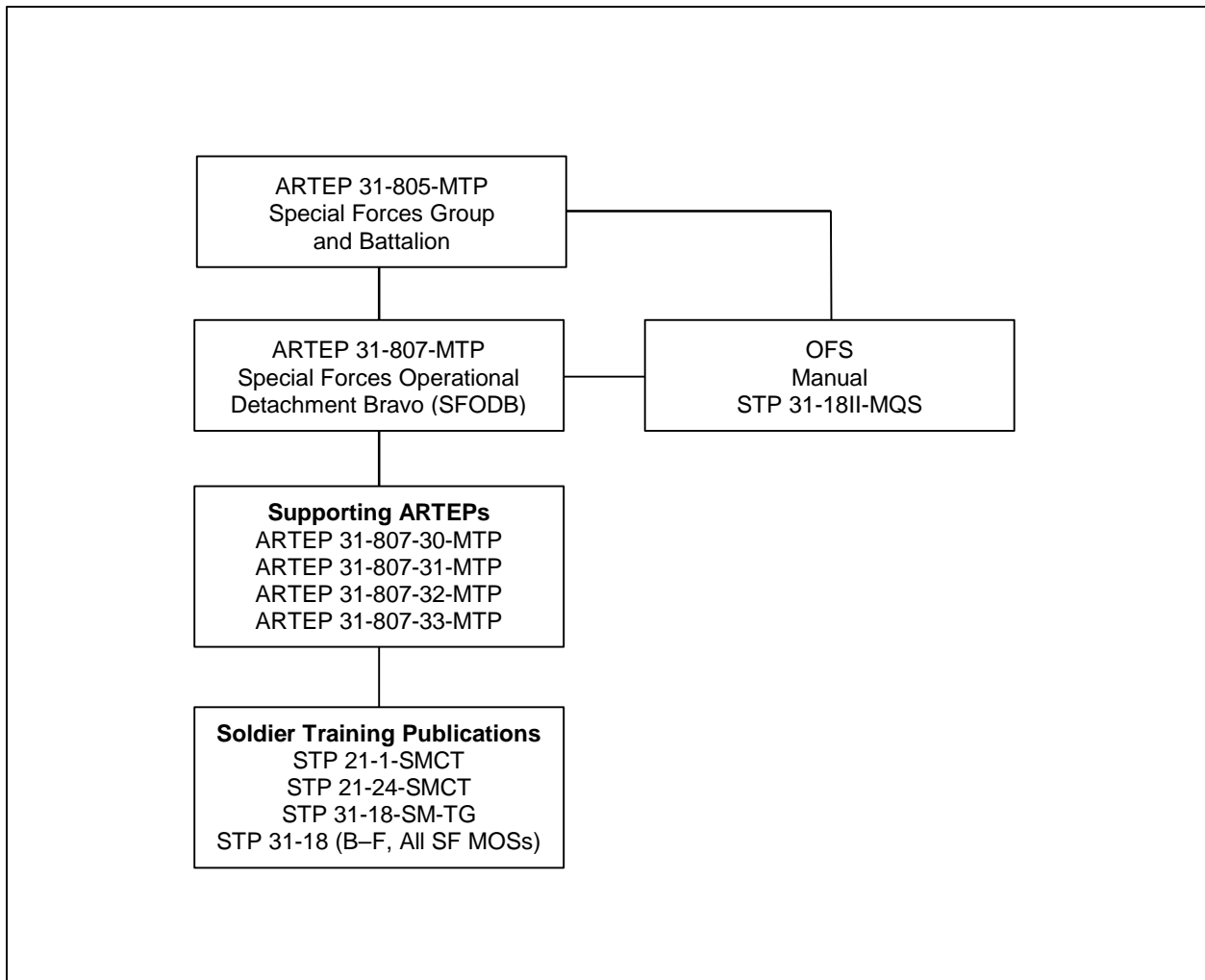   d. ARTEP 31-807-31-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Company: Special Reconnaissance.

Figure 1-3. MTP echelon relationship chart.

  e. ARTEP 31-807-32-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Company: Direct Action.

  f. ARTEP 31-807-33-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Company: Foreign Internal Defense.

NOTE: ARTEP 31-807-30-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Operational Detachment Alpha (SFODA), is being developed and, when published, will supersede all portions of the above ARTEPs that refer to the SFODA.

  g. Soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate MOS and skill levels.

  h. OFS manual for SF officers.

1-4. Contents. This ARTEP MTP consists of six chapters. Chapters 2 through 6, represented in Figure 1-4, page 1-4, illustrate the training management cycle the unit continually performs to identify unit strengths and weaknesses.

  a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides a base for the other chapters and explains their uses. It describes the MTP content and identifies the SFODB missions. This chapter briefly describes Army training doctrine and its relationship to SF unit training. It also provides techniques to accomplish multiechelon concurrent training for HN and FN forces.

  b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the relationship between missions and collective tasks. The training matrix is a planning tool for training.

  c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines, illustrates the relationship of the unit's critical wartime missions to field training exercises (FTXs) and their supporting situational training exercise (STXs). This chapter also provides a graphic portrayal of each supporting mission from its beginning to its end and the tasks that support each mission.

  d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, explains various collective training exercises available to the commander. When combined with leader training activities, the exercises assist the commander in training company and subordinate critical supporting missions and tasks. They provide a descriptive means for staff and unit training. In addition, the exercises may serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This chapter also outlines simulated collective training exercises available in the Army special operations forces (ARSOF) simulation center (SIMCEN).

  e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines (T&EOs), provides the training criteria for all tasks the SFODB must master to perform its missions. Each T&EO is a part of one or more of the company's missions. The T&EOs in this MTP are those mission-essential tasks that—when combined with outside directives, war plans, constraints, restrictions, and the commander's guidance—assist in the development and training of a unit's METL. In various combinations, the T&EOs make up larger training vehicles, such as the collective training exercises outlined in Chapter 4.

  f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations, provides instructions for planning, preparing, and executing an external evaluation.

1-5. Missions and Tasks.

  a. The critical wartime mission for the SFODB is to conduct SO. The missions that support the critical wartime mission are to—

  (1) *Provide C^2 for the operational detachments.* The SFODB can establish and operate, when augmented, an advanced operational base (AOB) to expand the C^2 capabilities of a Special Forces operational base (SFOB) or a forward operational base (FOB). It can also serve as a special operations command and control element (SOCCE) at a corps or higher HQ for a general purpose force commander (GPFC) who requires synchronization or physical integration with special operations forces (SOF) during his operation.

(2) *Provide operational support to the SFOB/FOB.* The SFODB can establish and operate an isolation facility (ISOFAC) in support of an SFOB or an FOB.
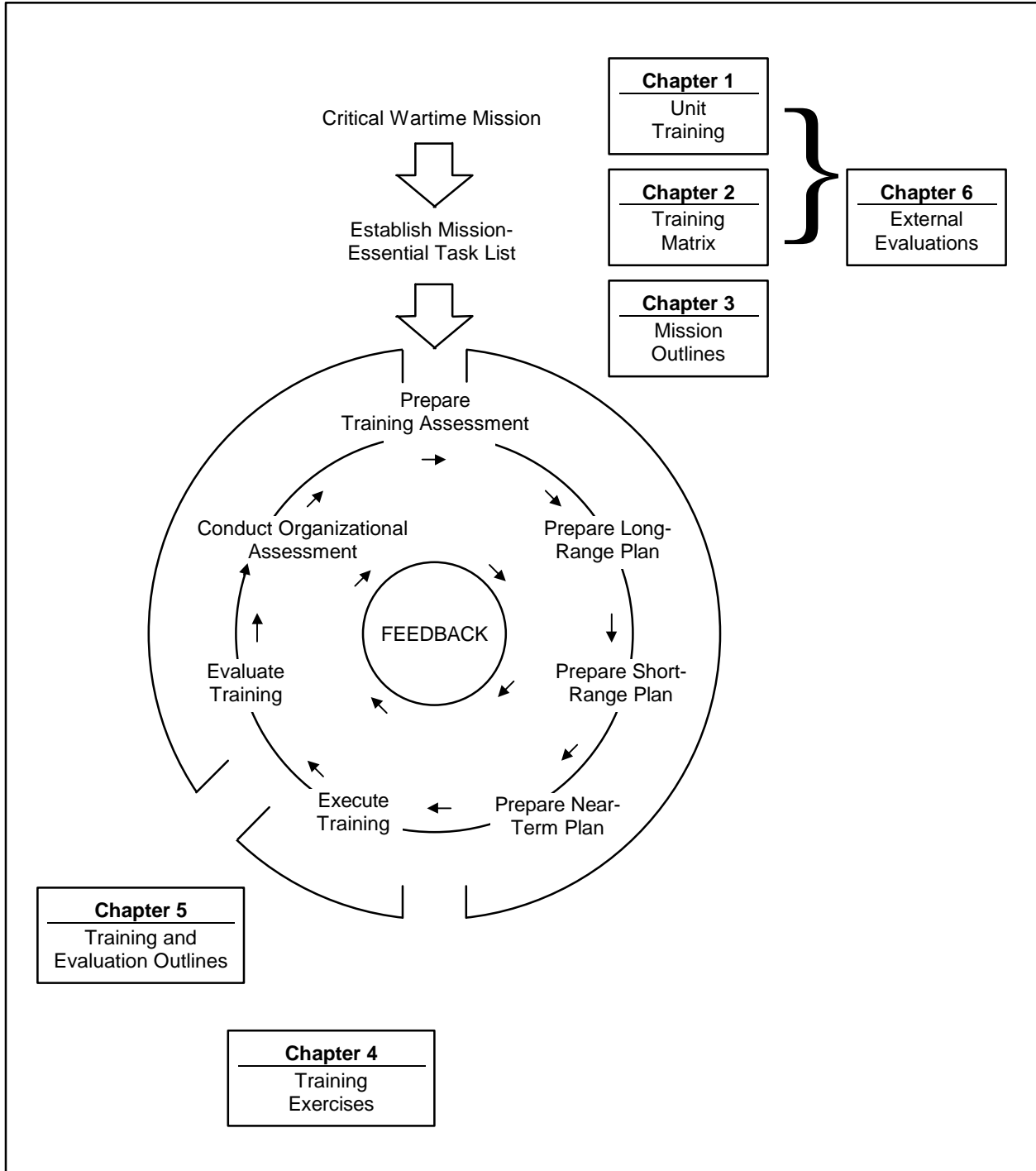
Figure 1-4. Training management cycle.

(3) *Execute SF operations.* As a component of ARSOF, SF plans, conducts, and supports SO in all operational environments in peace, conflict, and war. SF operations are normally joint and may be combined and part of an interagency activity. They may support or be supported by conventional forces. The role of SF varies with the environment and the level of activity. The SFODB can infiltrate and exfiltrate specified operational areas (OAs) by air, land, or sea. When directed, the SFODB can conduct operations in remote and hostile environments for extended periods with minimal external direction and support.

NOTE: In an unconventional warfare (UW) environment for example, the SFODB can serve as a pilot team to assess the resistance potential, establish an area command, develop an area complex, and provide C^2 for deployed SOF within the joint special operations area (JSOA).

b. The start point of the supporting missions outlined in this MTP is at the point the SFODB receives the WARNORD. It begins at the point a military response to an event is required. The result of the deliberate planning cycle is the OPLAN, supporting plan of execution, and time-phased force deployment data (TPFDD). This process normally requires 18-24 months to complete. The SFODB may or may not have a completed and rehearsed plan of execution during a crisis. Therefore, planners must also prepare to confront a no-plan situation. The SF unit, after receiving a WARNORD, is thus required to prepare and execute operations based on existing plans or situations where no plans exist. Commanders must prepare their units to plan and execute operations effectively in the event of either situation. This MTP is aligned with FM 31-20 and joint doctrine. It responds to the inherent capabilities of SF to respond to world events and successfully plan, execute, and sustain operations in support of a CONUS-based, power projection force.

c. Joint Chiefs of Staff Publication (Joint Pub) 3-05.3 maintains that 96 hours is the minimum time required to plan and execute an SF mission successfully. This MTP is therefore written under the assumption that the SF battalion and group will deploy into a theater of operations IAW the unit's TPFDD, will establish required operating bases, and will use the minimum 96-hour guideline to drive isolation planning and mission execution. The SFODB may deploy independently in a theater to provide C^2 for operational detachments. It may also deploy with a general purpose force (GPF) into theater when performing the role of a SOCCE. If time is insufficient for normal preparation of the mission, the commander must determine minimum essential preparation tasks and modify normal preparation procedures to complete the tasks in the available time. The commander must inform the higher command when he cannot complete those minimum preparation tasks without an unacceptable degree of risk of mission failure.

d. Each supporting mission consists of tasks the company staffs must execute to accomplish the overall mission. In conjunction with the supporting missions, SF units must perform survivability tasks, such as operating in a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) environment. SF units must perform concurrent tasks as well, such as providing intelligence support to protect SO units from hostile exploitation. Survivability and concurrent tasks enhance mission success and unit survival. Units should train and evaluate these tasks based on the task's applicability to the threat and the mission.

e. The SFODB should train for successful performance of the tasks outlined in each supporting mission (Figure 1-5, page 1-6). Units may train tasks individually or jointly with other tasks. In either training situation, the training must begin as either an STX, a command post exercise (CPX), or a simulation. The commander can execute these events as written exercises, or he may modify them to fit a specific training program. Leader activities and collective and individual tasks support each event. Soldiers master individual tasks by meeting the training standards outlined in CMF 18 soldier's manuals and Army OFS (or MQS) manuals. These exercises can subsequently develop into an FTX to train the critical wartime mission.

f. Leader tasks that support the SFODB are trained through—

(1) STPs and functional area training.

(2) Cell and staff section training.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│                                                                   │
│                         ┌──────────────┐                          │
│                         │   Conduct    │                          │
│                         │   Special    │                          │
│                         │  Operations  │                          │
│                         └──────────────┘                          │
│                                                                   │
│    ┌──────────────┐   ┌──────────────┐   ┌──────────────┐         │
│    │  Provide C²  │   │   Provide    │   │   Execute    │         │
│    │for Operational│  │Operational Support│ │     SF       │      │
│    │ Detachments  │   │to the SFOB/FOB│  │  Operations  │         │
│    └──────────────┘   └──────────────┘   └──────────────┘         │
│                                                                   │
│                  Combat Training Centers                          │
│                          (CTCs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                  Field Training Exercises                         │
│                          (FTXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                  Command Field Exercises                          │
│                          (CFXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                  Command Post Exercises                           │
│                          (CPXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                        Simulations                                │
│                    (ARSOF SIMCEN)                                 │
│                                                                   │
│                Situational Training Exercises                     │
│                          (STXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                   Logistical Exercises                            │
│                        (LOGEXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│              Tactical Exercise Without Troops                     │
│                          (TEWT)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                      Map Exercises                                │
│                        (MAPEXs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                Soldier Training Publications                      │
│                          (STPs)                                   │
│                                                                   │
│                Cell and Staff Section Training                    │
│                                                                   │
│                   Battle-Focus Analysis                           │
│                                                                   │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
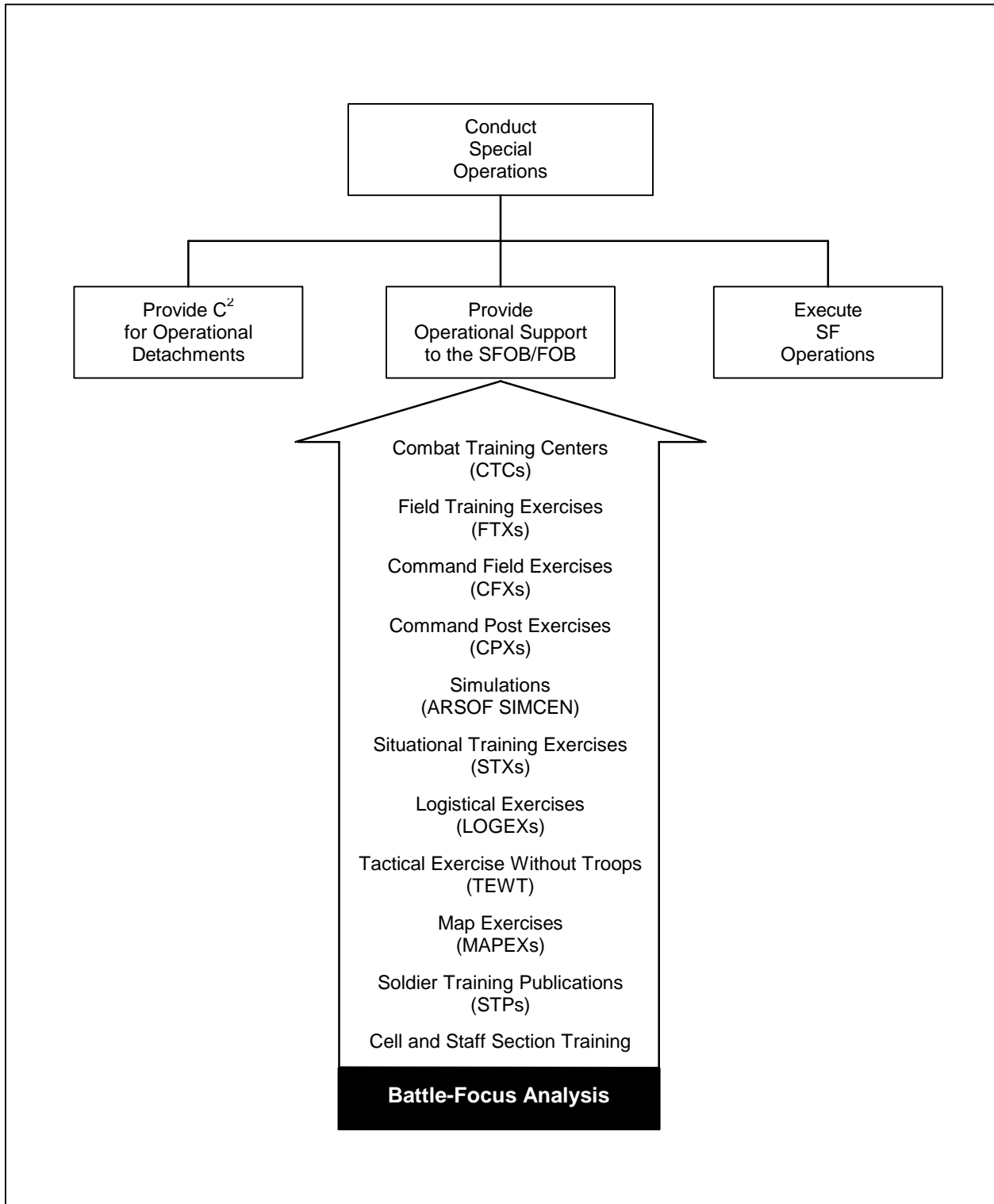
Figure 1-5. Critical wartime mission, supporting missions, and resources that support them.

     (3) Tactical exercises without troops (TEWTs).

     (4) Logistical exercises.

     (5) CPXs.

     (6) Command field exercises.

  g. Soldiers master the individual tasks that support the collective tasks, outlined in this manual, through training to the standard in applicable STPs.

1-6. Special Operations Imperatives. This MTP is IAW the SO imperatives (Figure 1-6). SF commanders and soldiers must incorporate these imperatives into their exercise planning and implementation if they are to be effective during mission execution. Remember, soldiers will fight as they have been trained. Train as you will fight! For more information on SO imperatives, refer to FM 31-20, *Doctrine for Special Forces Operations.*

1-7. Training Principles. The training principles outlined in FM 25-100 are the basis for this MTP.

  a. *Train as combined arms and joint Service teams.* Commanders at every level must strive to incorporate sister Services and other federal agencies into the mission-planning cycle. Training command relationships and coordination with these Services and agencies should mirror real-world conditions. To establish regular C^2 and support relationships and to increase an understanding of the capabilities and limitations of each Service, the training environment must also include other SOF units (Rangers, Psychological Operations [PSYOP], Civil Affairs [CA], Naval Special Warfare units, Air Force special operations, and Army aviation).

  b. *Train as you fight.*

     (1) The goal of effective training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every SF soldier must strive to attain this difficult goal. Whether planning and conducting unit training in support of critical wartime missions or training HN forces to accomplish the missions, SF leaders never have enough time to train. The maximum amount of training, therefore, must be accomplished within allotted time constraints. SFODBs must train themselves, as well as HN forces in specific situations, using multi-echelon training techniques.

- Understand the operational environment.
- Recognize political implications.
- Facilitate interagency activities.
- Engage the threat discriminately.
- Consider long-term effects.
- Ensure legitimacy and credibility of SO.
- Anticipate and control psychological effects.
- Apply capabilities indirectly.
- Develop multiple options.
- Ensure long-term sustainment.
- Provide sufficient intelligence.
- Balance security and synchronization.

Figure 1-6. SO imperatives.

(2) Company staff training develops and sustains planning, coordination, and other related staff functions relating to wartime mission requirements. For effective training, SFODBs must train together within the same HQ, with other elements within their organization, and when directed with HN or multinational elements. Remember, units will perform under combat conditions as they are trained. They will remember the last way they performed a task, right or wrong.

(3) SF soldiers must possess minimum language capabilities, through language-trained soldiers or available translators, to communicate with their HN counterparts and to establish effective working relations. SF units may sometimes use a third language common to both the units and the HN counterparts to gain mutual respect and a common understanding among the forces. SF units must therefore, at a minimum, strive to be conversant in their target languages since recruiting competent and trustworthy translators is sometimes difficult.

c. *Use appropriate doctrine*. This MTP and supporting materials conform to published and emerging doctrine. The SF commander, external evaluators, Joint Readiness Training Center (JRTC), and National Training Center (NTC) personnel are responsible for knowing all applicable doctrine (SF and conventional) and for training and evaluating staffs IAW published doctrine. SFODBs have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Peacetime training must, therefore, conform to the Joint and Army standards contained in this MTP, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications. Combat training center (CTC) personnel and external exercise developers must use T&EOs contained in this MTP as a guide to observe and evaluate SF groups and battalions as they are applicable to the training scenarios. Each SF MTP has specific T&EOs to support individual missions. Use the appropriate T&EOs for the mission being trained. All tasks, conditions, and standards are developed to train to the SFODB's critical wartime mission.

d. *Use performance-oriented training*. Soldiers become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and missions. SF soldiers, as well as HN forces, learn by doing—using a hands-on approach. Leaders and staffs are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that provides these opportunities.

e. *Train to challenge*. Challenging training builds competence and confidence by developing and refining skills. It inspires excellence by encouraging initiative and eagerness to learn. Successful completion of tough, realistic training increases the capacity and motivation of individuals and units to advance to more sophisticated and challenging levels of training.

f. *Train to sustain proficiency*. Once units have trained to a required skill level, leaders must structure training plans to repeat critical tasks training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. SF units must be prepared to accomplish their wartime missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks. They cannot rely on infrequent "peaking" to the appropriate level of wartime proficiency. Standardized evaluation will reveal training weaknesses. Training emphasis must always stay simultaneously on sustaining skills and on correcting identified weaknesses.

g. *Train using multiechelon techniques*. To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individual, collective, and leader skills at every level during training events. Multiechelon training is the most effective way to train and sustain a diverse number of mission-essential tasks within limited periods of training time.

h. *Train to maintain*. Because of the unique environment in which SO are conducted, leaders and soldiers at every level must be conscious of maintenance and logistical concerns. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is equally as important to soldiers as being experts in its use. Maintenance must be a part of the SF unit's training to enhance the unit's capability to sustain operations in austere environments with limited external support. Maintenance must be a part of HN training as well to ensure the capability of the HN to continue to function after the withdrawal of U.S. support.

i. *Make commanders the primary trainers*. Leaders at all levels are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. Their personal involvement is essential to training and battlefield success. The leaders must develop into primary training managers and trainers for their organizations. To accomplish their training responsibilities, commanders must apply the following training imperatives:

(1) Base training on wartime mission requirements and develop METL.
(2) Identify applicable Army standards and train to MTP standards.
(3) Assess current levels of proficiency.
(4) Provide required resources.
(5) Develop and execute training plans that result in proficient individuals, leaders, and detachments.

NOTE: Employ the training imperatives when developing and conducting HN training as well.

1-8. Unit Training Using This MTP. The intent of this MTP is to help plan, prepare, and conduct unit training as explained in FMs 25-100 and 25-101. Automation of MTP T&EOs and other unit training resources help in supporting the SATS. The features built into this software program assist the unit commanders and subordinate elements in developing training to support their missions. As an additional benefit, the SATS program may support the rapid development of HN training materials and schedules. MTP databases exist for most nonproponent-published ARTEPs. The SATS program and developed databases are available through the C^2 microcomputer user's group.

a. Based upon the battalion commander's guidance, the battalion's approved METL, and the assigned missions, the SFODB commander analyzes collective tasks and selects the tasks critical for wartime mission accomplishment, which becomes the draft SFODB METL. The SFODB operations warrant officer must plan, conduct, and evaluate staff training in support of this guidance and the approved METL. Company commanders must plan, conduct, and evaluate SFODB and SFODA training in support of the battalion commander's guidance and SFODB-approved METLs.

b. The SFODB commander reviews the supporting mission diagrams and the overall outline in Chapter 3. He determines if the training exercises support the next higher commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, he refers to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix lists all critical collective tasks that must be mastered to fulfill the mission. Information in Chapter 3 can also help the commander develop his unique METL tailored to the mission.

c. The commander prioritizes tasks that need training. He never has enough time to train in every area; therefore, he must focus on mission-essential tasks. He emphasizes building and sustaining proficiency in METL tasks that cannot be performed to standard, or he focuses on sustaining proficiency in tasks that are most difficult. The commander analyzes and prioritizes the tasks during training meetings with subordinate commanders. He works the tasks into the training schedule by—

(1) Listing the tasks in priority and frequency of desired training.
(2) Determining the amount of time required and ways to use multiechelon training to the best effect.
(3) Determining the location of the training.
(4) Determining support and resource requirements.
(5) Organizing training into blocks of instruction.
(6) Assigning responsibilities.

d. The subordinate commander provides the preceding training requirements to the next higher commander. Once he obtains approval of the list of tasks to be trained, he makes sure they are included on the unit training schedule.

e. The SFODB commander coordinates the support and resource requirements with the operations and

training officer (S3) well in advance of the scheduled training to allow the S3 sufficient time to coordinate requirements.

    f. Commanders must make sure standards are enforced during all training events.

1-9. Force Protection (Safety). Leaders must execute training to standards. When leaders train to standards, they train safely. They do not take shortcuts. They adhere to the subtasks and subtask standards. Soldiers must be aware of the harm they can cause themselves and others by the way they operate and train with their assigned equipment. They must understand what can happen when they take unnecessary risks during training. (See Figure 1-7) The

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		FREQUENT	LIKELY	OCCASIONAL	SELDOM	UNLIKELY
S E V E R I T Y	CATASTROPHIC	E	E	H	H	M
	CRITICAL	E	H	H	M	L
	MARGINAL	H	M	M	L	L
	NEGLIGIBLE	M	L	L	L	L

H A Z A R D   P R O B A B I L I T Y (The likelihood that an event will occur.)

Frequent: Occurs often, continuously experienced.

Likely: Occurs several times.

Occasional: Occurs sporadically.

Seldom: Unlikely, but could occur at some time.

Unlikely: Can assume it will not occur.

S E V E R I T Y (The degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-impairing factors.)

Catastrophic: Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage.

Critical: Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.

Marginal: Minor injury, lost workday accident, minor system damage, minor property damage.

Negligible: First aid or minor medical treatment, minor system impairment.

R I S K   L E V E L S

E (Extremely High): Loss of ability to accomplish mission.

H (High): Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.

M (Moderate): Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.

L (Low): Little or no impact on accomplishment of mission.
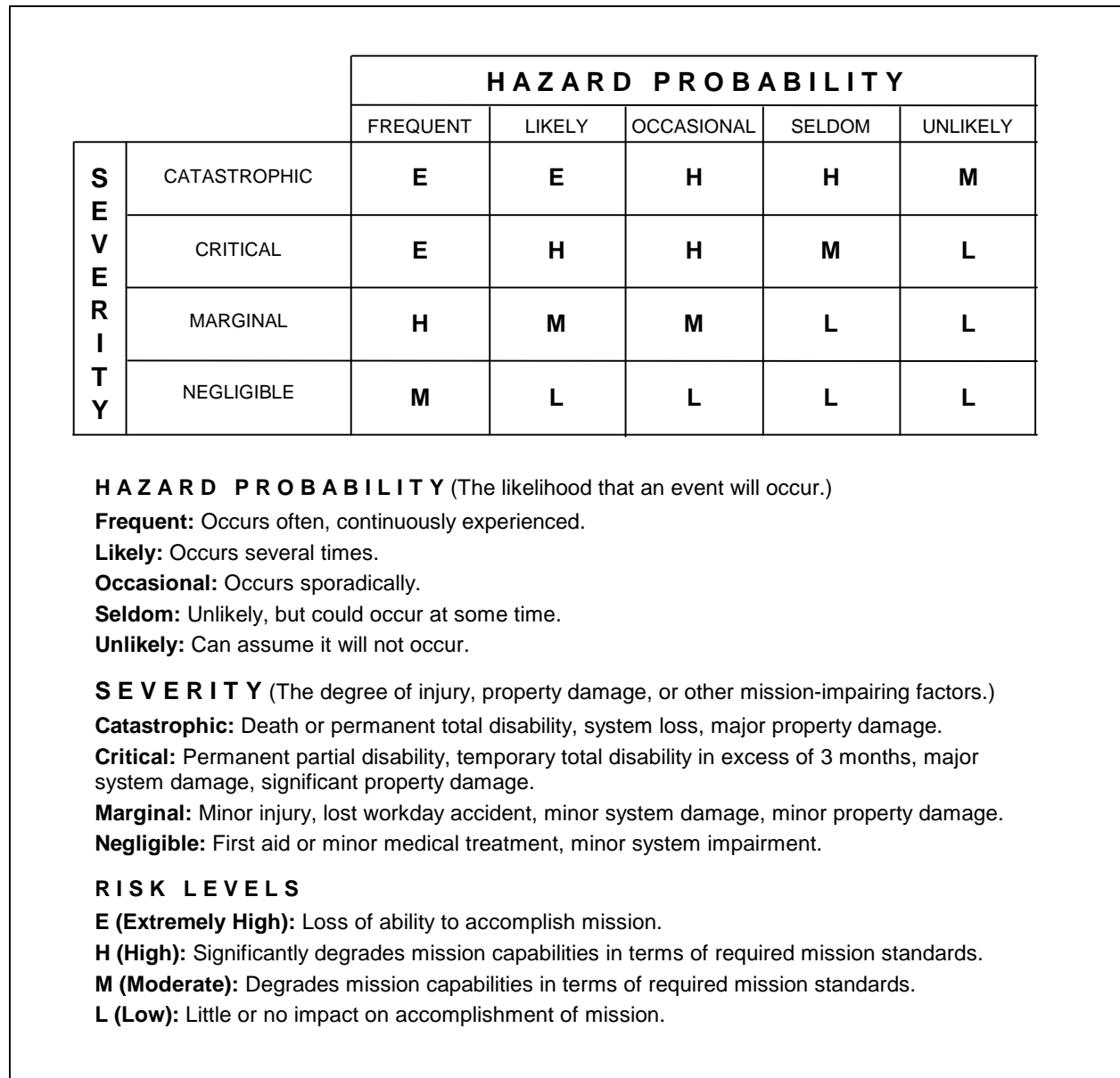
Figure 1-7. Risk assessment matrix.

chain of command must be aware of the destruction and harm the unit or element under its control or supervision can cause to others and must remember that we train in a dangerous environment when operating in the field. Leaders should not avoid training because of safety concerns but should train to standards and thereby achieve combat readiness safely. Safety training is conducted on a three-tier basis. It includes total chain of command involvement in planning training, a chain of command presence, and individual responsibility.

a. Tier I is the commander's responsibility. It involves validating the structural soundness of the training and evaluation plan from a safety perspective. The commander considers the arrangement of training, makes the program sequential, and conducts a level of training consistent with the abilities of those being trained. He also addresses safety-related matters by MOS.

b. Tier II involves actions to be taken by responsible individuals (leaders, soldiers, civilians, and contractors) during preparation for training and execution of the training plan. The noncommissioned officer in charge or officer in charge is responsible for this tier. At the training site, he establishes a training safety overwatch. He focuses total safety emphasis on adherence to standards, environmental factors, incidents that contribute to accidents, risk assessment, and risk management IAW FM 101-5. Responsible individuals must know how to balance tasks against training requirements, monitor conditions for safety and health hazards, and eliminate or control those hazards. They monitor the welfare of the troops in everything that happens.

c. Tier III is everyone's business. It involves soldiers being "tuned in" to looking after each other and themselves. Soldiers should establish a buddy system for safety, with each soldier charged to keep a safety overwatch on one another. Soldiers should stress individual training safety and first aid responsibilities. They should emphasize recognition of unsafe conditions and unsafe acts, as well as alertness to human error. Anyone has the authority to halt any activity that is inherently unsafe.

1-10. Active and Reserve Component Training. The difference between Active Component (AC) and Reserve Component (RC) training opportunities is important to the Army's senior leaders and theater CINCs. They must be prepared to provide or receive units from the National Guard, RC, and AC in wartime or in peacetime exercises and deployment.

a. AC units are generally located at or near installations that have—

    (1) Nearby modern ranges and training areas available for unit training.
    (2) Classrooms, simulators, and learning centers available for individual training.
    (3) Academies, libraries, and other professional development resources available for leader training.

b. The RC training environment for the National Guard and Army Reserve is generally more challenging than that of the AC. The training year for the average soldier in an RC unit consists of 24 days of inactive duty for training and 15 days of annual training, for a total of 39 days per year. Units may have additional training time, depending on the availability of funds from higher HQ. Soldiers and leaders in the RC have military service and separate civilian careers competing for their attention and time. These units face considerable geographic dispersion. For example, the average RC detachment is dispersed over a 150- to 300-mile radius, soldiers travel an average of 40 miles to reach the nearest local training area, and units must move an average of 150 miles to the nearest major training area. Most RC units must share facilities concurrently with other units and train simultaneously with them if scheduling cannot be arranged beforehand. This situation could have direct impact on the training environment in comparison to the facilities available to the AC units.

1-11. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources is an ever-increasing concern to the Army. All unit leaders are responsible for decreasing—and if possible eliminating—damage to the environment when

conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management. It maintains the same philosophy as well. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

a. *Identify hazards*. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilians (METT-TC). This effort requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water or for destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. *Assess the hazard*. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-8, page 1-13). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, moderate, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrices.

c. *Make environmental risk decisions*. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. *Brief the chain of command*. Brief the chain of command—including the installation environmental office, if applicable—on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrices. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. *Implement controls*. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. *Supervise*. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-12. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 of this ARTEP list the standards an SFODB must achieve for each task.

a. Evaluations may be internal or external. Internal evaluations occur at all levels and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are conducted by a HQ two levels above the unit being evaluated.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. An underlying concept of an ARTEP is to train and evaluate simultaneously. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback. Every evaluation is also a training session. Leaders and trainers must continually evaluate to optimize training. Evaluation must occur during the execution of training.

c. Emphasis should be on direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual training or during the conduct of drills is an easy procedure. In higher level exercises, however, the procedure is usually not feasible with outside evaluators. The habit of leader evaluation at every level makes the difference. After-action reviews (AARs) should occur frequently at logical intervals during exercises, usually after the completion of a major subordinate task. This technique is a proven one that allows the correction of shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. AARs prevent the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides information on conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training. In addition, Chapter 6 of this MTP provides guidance on performing external evaluation.

1-13. Feedback. User feedback helps make sure MTPs answer the training needs of units in the field. Your recommendations for improving this ARTEP MTP are, therefore, important to us. To let us know your thoughts about this MTP, please complete the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP; then, mail it to the address indicated on the questionnaire.

Environmental Area		Rating	
U N I T O P E R A T I O N S	**R I S K I M P A C T**		
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Environmental Risk Assessment Work Sheet

	Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	Assembly area activities	Field maintenance of equipment	Garrison maintenance of equipment	Risk rating
Air pollution						
Archaeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Moderate	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division Commander
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM Commander

Risk Categories

Figure 1-8. Environmental risk assessment matrix.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIX

2-1. General. Training matrices help SFODB commanders plan their detachment training. Commanders use training matrices to make sure all tasks relating to supporting missions are a part of evaluated training exercises. Figure 2-1 identifies supporting missions for the SFODB.

- Provide C^2 for the Operational Detachments
- Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB
- Execute SF Operations

Figure 2-1. Supporting missions.

2-2. Training Matrix. The training matrix at Figure 2-2 shows the relationship of collective tasks to supporting missions. It also lists the collective tasks under the appropriate Battlefield Operating Systems (BOS). The last column in the matrix identifies common collective tasks that may be performed anytime during the mission. The SFODB commander uses this matrix to plan the training for a specific supporting mission or the BOS. To train a specific supporting mission, the SFODB commander identifies the collective tasks indicated in the vertical column. Based upon the known proficiency of individuals, leaders, staffs sections, and teams, the commander focuses his training on correcting identified weaknesses. The SFODB commander trains the BOS by training all tasks listed under a specific system.

Collective Task and T&EO Number		Provide C^2 for the Operational Detachments	Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB	Execute SF Operations	Survivability Tasks*	Concurrent Tasks*
Intelligence**						
31-2-0129	Provide Intelligence Support to SF Operations					X

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective tasks matrix.

Collective Task and T&EO Number	Provide C^2 for the Operational Detachments	Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB	Execute SF Operations	Survivability Tasks*	Concurrent Tasks*
		Supporting Mission			
Intelligence (Continued)					
31-2-0113 Debrief an Asset			x		
Maneuver					
31-2-0102 Deploy to the Operational Area	x				
31-2-0117 Infiltrate the Operational Area by Land			x		
31-2-0118 Infiltrate by Air Operations			x		
31-2-0119 Infiltrate by Waterborne Operations			x		
31-2-0126 Conduct Exfiltration by Land			x		
31-2-0127 Conduct Exfiltration by Air Operations			x		
31-2-0128 Conduct Exfiltration by Waterborne Operations			x		
31-2-0108 Redeploy to a Specified Location	x				
31-2-0124 Conduct Linkup Operations			x		
Fire Support					
31-2-0130 Coordinate for Combat Support					x
31-2-0132 Integrate Psychological Operations					x
Mobility and Survivability					
31-2-0103 Establish an Advanced Operational Base	x				
31-2-0122 Develop the Area Complex			x		
03-3-R201 Prepare for Operations in an NBC Environment				x	
03-3-R202 React to a Chemical or Biological Attack				x	
03-3-R313 Operate in an NBC Environment				x	

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective tasks matrix (continued).

Collective Task and T&EO Number	Provide C² for the Operational Detachments	Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB	Execute SF Operations	Survivability Tasks*	Concurrent Tasks*
Mobility and Survivability (Continued)					
03-3-R310 Conduct Chemical Survey				X	
03-2-R309 Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance				X	
03-3-R224 Perform Chemical or Biological Decontamination				X	
08-2-R316 Evacuate Casualties				X	
31-2-0135 React to a Terrorist or an Insurgent Incident				X	
31-2-0133 Initiate Evasion			X		
31-2-0134 Evade			X		
31-2-0136 Evacuate the Advanced Operational Base				X	
Air Defense					
44-2-R307 Use Passive Air Defense Measures				X	
44-2-R308 Take Small Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft				X	
Combat Service Support					
31-2-0101 Conduct Premission Activities	X	X			
31-2-0131 Integrate Civil-Military Operations					X
Command and Control					
31-2-0100 Conduct Mission Planning	X	X			
31-2-0121 Establish an Area Command Group and Staff			X		
31-2-0104 Operate an Advanced Operational Base	X				
31-2-0105 Establish a SOCCE	X				
31-2-0106 Operate as a SOCCE	X				

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective tasks matrix (continued).

Collective Task and T&EO Number	Provide C² for the Operational Detachments	Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB	Execute SF Operations	Survivability Tasks*	Concurrent Tasks*
			Supporting Mission		
Command and Control (Continued)					
31-2-0109 Establish an Isolation Facility		X			
31-2-0110 Operate an Isolation Facility		X			
31-2-0107 Facilitate Linkup Between Operational Detachments and General Purpose Forces	X				
31-2-0111 Prepare the Isolation Area			X		
31-2-0112 Prepare for the Mission			X		
31-2-0114 Prepare the SFODB E&R Plan			X		
31-2-0115 Present a Briefback			X		
31-2-0116 Sterilize the Isolation Area			X		
31-2-0123 Plan Interdiction Operations			X		
31-2-0120 Establish Contact			X		
31-2-0125 Demobilize the Guerrilla Force			X		

  * Although not supporting missions, these tasks may be executed at any time during the mission.

 ** BOS.

Figure 2-2. Mission-to-collective tasks matrix (continued).

CHAPTER 3

MISSION OUTLINES

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks. Each outline gives the trainer a diagram of the unit mission and its collective tasks.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Because unit training is mission oriented, mission outlines show how task training contributes to the unit's ability to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Figures 3-1 through 3-6, give the commander a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

Figure 3-1. Supporting mission and tasking diagram for providing C^2 for the operational detachments.

Receive Mission

Conduct Mission
Planning
31-2-0100

Conduct Premission
Activities
31-2-0101

Establish an
Isolation Facility
31-2-0109

Operate an
Isolation Facility
31-2-0110

Figure 3-2. Supporting mission and task diagram for providing operational support to the SFOB/FOB.

Receive Mission

Prepare the
Isolation Area
31-2-0111

Prepare
for the Mission
31-2-0112

Debrief
an Asset
31-2-0113

Prepare the
SFODB E&R Plan
31-2-0114

Present
a Briefback
31-2-0115

Sterilize the
Isolation Area
31-2-0116

| Infiltrate the Operational Area by Land 31-2-0117 | **OR** | Infiltrate by Air Operations 31-2-0118 | **OR** | Infiltrate by Waterborne Operations 31-2-0119 |

CONTINUED

Figure 3-3. Supporting mission and task diagram for executing SF operations.

```
                                    ┌──────────────────────┐
                                    │     Establish        │
                                    │     Contact          │
                                    │     31-2-0120        │
                                    └──────────────────────┘
                                               │
                                               ▼
                                    ┌──────────────────────┐
             ON ORDER              │ Establish an Area Command │
         ┌──────────────────────────│ Group and Staff      │
         │                          │     31-2-0121        │
         │                          └──────────────────────┘
         │                                     │
         ▼                                     ▼
┌──────────────────┐              ┌──────────────────────┐
│ Initiate Evasion │              │     Develop the      │
│   31-2-0133      │              │    Area Complex      │
└──────────────────┘              │     31-2-0122        │
         │                        └──────────────────────┘
         ▼                                     │
┌──────────────────┐                           ▼
│     Evade        │              ┌──────────────────────┐
│   31-2-0134      │              │  Plan Interdiction   │
└──────────────────┘              │    Operations        │
                                  │     31-2-0123        │
                                  └──────────────────────┘
                                               │
                                               ▼
                                  ┌──────────────────────┐
                                  │   Conduct Linkup     │
                                  │    Operations        │
                                  │     31-2-0124        │
                                  └──────────────────────┘
                                               │
                                               ▼
                                  ┌──────────────────────┐
                                  │   Demobilize the     │
                                  │   Guerrilla Force    │
                                  │     31-2-0125        │
                                  └──────────────────────┘
```

Figure 3-3. Supporting mission and task diagram for executing SF operations (continued).

PROVIDE C^2 FOR THE OPERATIONAL DETACHMENTS	PROVIDE OPERATIONAL SUPPORT TO THE SFOB/FOB	EXECUTE SF OPERATIONS
31-2-0100	31-2-0100	31-2-0111
31-2-0101	31-2-0101	31-2-0112
31-2-0102	31-2-0109	31-2-0113
31-2-0103	31-2-0110	31-2-0114
31-2-0104		31-2-0115
31-2-0105		31-2-0116
31-2-0106		31-2-0117
31-2-0107		31-2-0118
31-2-0108		31-2-0119
		31-2-0120
		31-2-0121
		31-2-0122
		31-2-0123
		31-2-0124
		31-2-0125
		31-2-0126
		31-2-0127
		31-2-0128
		31-2-0133
		31-2-0134

Figure 3-4. Supporting missions and collective task numbers.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│  Perform Chemical                    Mission                                  │
│  or Biological  ───────────────►    Continues                                │
│  Decontamination                                                              │
│  03-3-R224                                              Take Small Arms       │
│                                                         Air Defense           │
│  Conduct Chemical    Conduct Chemical                   Measures Against      │
│  Survey              Reconnaissance                     Hostile Aircraft      │
│  03-3-R310           03-2-R309                          44-2-R308             │
│                                                                               │
│              Operate              React to a          Use Passive            │
│              in an NBC            Terrorist or an      Air Defense            │
│              Environment         Insurgent Incident   Measures                │
│              03-3-R313           31-2-0135            44-2-R307               │
│                                                                               │
│           React to a          Evacuate              Evacuate                 │
│           Chemical or         the Advanced          Casualties               │
│           Biological Attack   Operational Base      08-2-R316                │
│           03-3-R202           31-2-0136                                       │
│                                                                               │
│         Prepare for          Terrorist              Indicators               │
│         Operations in an     or Insurgent           of an                    │
│         NBC Environment      Attack Occurs          Air Attack               │
│         03-3-R201                                                             │
│                                                                               │
│       Indicators          Commander             Casualties                   │
│       of an NBC           Orders Evacuation     Occur During                 │
│       Attack              of Advanced           Operations                   │
│                           Operational Base                                    │
│                                                                               │
│       Initiating Action May Occur Anytime During the Operation               │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Figure 3-5. Supporting task diagram for SFOB/FOB survivability tasks.

```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│  Provide Intelligence   Coordinate        Integrate        Integrate         │
│  Support to             for Combat         Civil-Military   Psychological     │
│  SF Operations          Support            Operations       Operations        │
│  31-2-0129              31-2-0130          31-2-0131        31-2-0132         │
│                                                                               │
│               Ongoing Tasks During Mission                                    │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Figure 3-6. Supporting task diagram for SFOB/FOB concurrent tasks.

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

4-1. General. This chapter provides guidance to the SFODB commander and the SFODB on how to plan and conduct training exercises that effectively develop, sustain, and evaluate the unit's ability to perform its mission. It focuses on simulations, CPXs, FTXs, and STXs—four types of exercises to train and practice the unit's collective tasks.

4-2. Simulations. Simulations give the commander and his staff a high-quality, cost-effective training alternative. When used properly, simulations create the climate and stress of high-intensity operating conditions in a controlled environment.

    a. The commander schedules simulations in the unit's training cycle, either at home station or through the ARSOF SIMCEN.

    b. The ARSOF SIMCEN, through realistic simulations, provides a conduit for the commander and his detachment to train repetitively in all aspects of the BOS with real and simulated conventional units.

    c. The ARSOF SIMCEN provides commanders the capability to—

        (1) Participate in Army and other than Department of Defense (DOD) warfighting exercises.

        (2) Integrate SOF into all warfighting simulations.

        (3) Provide a more cost-effective means for training officers and noncommissioned officers (NCOs) at all levels.

        (4) Develop and conduct seminar-type wargames and simulations.

    d. The ARSOF SIMCEN also supports the warfighting capability to—

        (1) Use a realistic and stressful training environment to exercise the rigors of C^2 processes with minimal resource expenditures.

        (2) Enhance the capability to plan, coordinate, and execute SO across the operational continuum.

        (3) Teach joint and combined operational planning, coordination, and execution of SO, as well as coordinating with agencies outside the DOD.

        (4) Increase proficiency in skills required to plan, assist, and synchronize antidrug efforts, nation-building activities, combined training exercises, and disaster relief operations effectively.

    e. Simulation-assisted training provides a capability to conduct collective, METL-focused training in all mission activities. The training allows the detachment to train to all aspects of the mission analysis process. It also gives the commander a means to exercise the decision-making process. The commander can tailor training to available resources, especially time. Because many simulations can be run at different speeds and can be switched back and forth through scenarios, the commander can repeat aspects of the exercise to correct mistakes or to reinforce lessons learned while exploring several courses of actions (COAs). At present, the following systems are available in the ARSOF SIMCEN:

        (1) *Corps battle-simulation (CBS) system.* The commander uses the CBS in the battle command training program (BCTP), usually as part of a CTC rotation. The primary focus of the CBS is to train the staff of a group, regiment, or brigade. It is well suited for the training of a SOCCE. The commander uses the CBS to execute SO in a broad sense. If the focus of the mission is on specific actions, commanders should pursue higher resolution simulations.

(2) *Brigade/battalion battle-simulation (BBS) system.* The BBS is best suited for training SFODAs in conventional brigade and battalion operations. The commander uses the BBS for SOF-specific missions, especially special reconnaissance (SR), direct action (DA), and UW as a staff trainer for FOB and AOB operations. The BBS allows the commander and the SFODB to practice decision-making skills while executing their operational mission in a realistically simulated multithreat, time-stressed combat environment. The commander and the SFODB must be able to develop, correlate, and access large quantities of tactical and logistical data, formulate situational estimates, and make immediate decisions in the C² of coordinated combat, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets.

(3) *JANUS (Army).* JANUS (Army) is a two-sided interactive ground-combat simulation. The model simulates two opposing forces (OPFORs), which are simultaneously directed and controlled by two sets of players. Each player monitors, directs, reacts to, and redirects all key actions of the simulated units under his control. The disposition of the OPFOR is not completely known to the player in control of the friendly force elements. The primary modeling focus in JANUS (Army) is on military systems that participate in maneuver and indirect fire operations on land. For SF, the primary focus of JANUS (Army) is on training SFODAs in conventional operations at the battalion- to platoon-level and on the FOB or AOB staff trainer. The high-level resolution of JANUS (Army) also provides the capability to train SF- and Ranger-specific missions.

(4) *SPECTRUM.* SPECTRUM combines conflict, attrition-based modeling with a multivariant sociological model that simulates political, economic, and sociocultural activities. It simulates combat operations, logistical problems, and movement over digital terrain as well. SPECTRUM poses problems relevant to operations other than war (OOTW). The purpose of SPECTRUM is to model the sociocultural environment into which the military forces may deploy and conduct OOTW.

f. Future systems to be integrated into the center are the joint theater-level simulation (JTLS) and the joint conflict model (JCM).

(1) The **JTLS** is a multisided (up to 10 sides), interactive simulation that provides combat and operations short of combat in a theater environment. It portrays joint forces, including SOF. Its focus is on the operational level of war, but it can portray scenarios requiring high resolution. The simulation is used to develop COAs and to evaluate planning. The JTLS supports Army special operations task force (ARSOTF), SFOB, and FOB commander and staff training.

(2) The **JCM** is a five-sided, interactive ground, air, and maritime combat simulation. Its five-sided capability makes it particularly useful to UW and foreign internal defense (FID) training scenarios. It is based on JANUS (Army) and retains many of its characteristics. The JCM is a versatile simulation capable of supporting ARSOTF, SFOB, and FOB training as well as tactical-level missions for SFODs.

4-3. Command Post Exercises. CPXs are medium-cost training exercises that require a greater commitment of soldiers' time and resources than do map exercises (MAPEXs) or TEWTs. SFODB CPXs focus on providing support for the operational detachments, either in the establishment of an AOB or a SOCCE. An excellent example of a CPX for an SFODB is the participation in a BCTP exercise as a SOCCE. The commander may conduct a CPX in garrison or in the field. CPXs are often part of a simulation or a larger exercise.

a. CPXs are expanded MAPEXs that use tactical communications systems and personnel in an operational environment. Distances between operating bases and elements vary based on availability of space and facilities. Generally, the distances between the operating bases are greatly reduced during CPXs in garrison.

b. The commander uses CPXs to train his SFODB to—

(1) Build teamwork and cohesion.

(2) Test communications systems and rehearse reporting procedures.

(3) Prepare estimates and orders.

(4) Establish an operating base or center.

(5) Conduct operations IAW T&EOs in Chapter 5 of this manual and unit SOPs.

4-4. Field Training Exercises. FTXs give the commander a method for training the SFODB in its critical wartime mission. They provide a logical sequence for performing previously trained tasks. This MTP also provides the evaluation framework for the supporting mission. Additionally, FTXs provide training on survivability tasks. FTXs, with supporting STXs, depict a logical sequence for performing the tasks previously trained as separate STXs.

a. FTXs take place under simulated combat conditions in the field. They fully integrate the total force in a realistic combat environment. FTXs involve combat arms, CS, and CSS assets. They allow participants to appreciate the aspects of communications; the effects of casualties; and time, distance, and other factors that complicate the actual battlefield. FTXs are the most resource-intensive and costly training exercises. They may require extensive fuel, repair parts, support personnel, OPFOR or role players, maneuver areas, and observer-controllers (OCs). FTXs train the commander, staff, and subordinates in the realistic planning, coordination, and execution of SF operations.

b. Figure 4-1 provides a sample SFODB FTX.

Special Forces Operational Detachment Bravo

FTX: Conduct Foreign Internal Defense Operations

1. Objective. The objective of this FTX is to train the SFODB in executing an assigned FID mission, from the receipt of the operation order (OPORD) to the end of the mission. The FTX provides practice in planning, deployment, employment, redeployment, and post-mission activities. At the discretion of the trainer, an SFODB unassisted evasion and recovery (E&R) or emergency evacuation may also be practiced as alternatives to normal redeployment.

2. Interface. This FTX interfaces with the following STXs:

a. STX 1: Plan and Prepare for a Mission Support Base (MSB).

b. STX 2: Provide FID Mission Support.

3. Training.

a. Guidance. Conduct preexercise training for this FTX to make sure maximum training value is guarded. The preexercise training should include—

(1) Conducting classes on or review of unit SOPs pertaining to isolation, deployment, advisory assistance, redeployment, and SFODB E&R.

(2) Clarifying coordination procedures for joint operations with other SO units, such as CA and PSYOP, and for using normally available CS and CSS.

(3) Conducting coordination meetings with representatives of all units and agencies participating in or supporting this FTX.

(4) Reviewing operational agreements and treaties between the United States and those countries where the SF Group or Battalion would most likely operate in the event of actual deployment or where the FTX will be conducted.

Figure 4-1. Sample SFODB FTX.

(5) Reviewing the standards in the T&EOs listed in Chapter 5 of this MTP.

(6) Conducting language training or language-refresher training.

b. Training Enhancers.

(1) Use notional materials (maps and other documents) in the HN language, when applicable. A notional (or actual) area study must be available. Also, develop notional information for intelligence reporting and analysis. Make sure the notional materials have sufficient detail to support the training scenario realistically.

(2) Coordinate with the unit leaders who are providing support personnel to role-play the HN forces receiving the advisory assistance. Obtain from them their unit's METL and their commander's critical training requirements. Make sure the training requirements and METL, as applicable, are translated into the specified and implied HN advisory assistance tasks given to the SFODB.

(3) Use supporting SF personnel to role-play key HN personnel. Such role-playing should make realistic control of the HN forces easier. It should also allow for evaluation of effective rapport.

(4) Use the SFODB's assisted evasion plans as an alternative to redeployment.

(5) Integrate threats to the SFODB's survivability (NBC and terrorists or insurgents) into all applicable areas of the FTX. Base the data on a realistic threat analysis. The data should support the developed scenario.

c. General Situation.

(1) The overall actions that typically occur in an SFODB FTX are as follows:

Event	Action	Estimated Time
1	Conduct predeployment planning	As determined by the WARNORD
2	Conduct AAR	1 hour
3	Deploy to the operational base	As determined by special operations command (SOC) orders and mission planning
4	Conduct AAR	1 hour
5	Employ operational detachments	As determined by SOMPF MITASKS and predeployment planning
6	Conduct AAR	1 hour
7	Redeploy the force	As determined by SOC orders and mission planning
8	Conduct final AAR	3 hours

(2) Generally, the SF group or battalion is alerted and placed in isolation, **if necessary**. It conducts mission planning and preparations. Depending on the SF group or battalion's mission and implied and specific tasks, the SFODB may plan and prepare simultaneously with its subordinate SFODAs or it may complete and briefback the SF group or

Figure 4-1. Sample SFODB FTX (continued).

battalion OPORD first and then issue it to its subordinate SFODAs. In either case, the SFODB closely monitors all SFODA planning and preparations.

(3) After mission planning and preparations, the SF Company deploys to the JSOA and conducts its assigned FID mission. After execution of the mission (or on order), the company redeploys.

(4) The trainer should consider variations to this general scenario as the unit's proficiency in the basic mission increases. Examples of possible variations are as follows:

(a) Deploy an advanced echelon (ADVON) from the SFODB specially tasked and organized to survey conditions in the JSOA and, as necessary, prepare for the reception of the main body. This survey may take place before or concurrently with the conduct of premission activities.

(b) Conduct an emergency evacuation of the SF elements from the JSOA instead of normal redeployment.

(c) Use a staggered deployment scheme to practice the aspects of handing over the execution of a continuing FID mission from one SF element to another.

(d) Transition to the execution of likely follow-on or be-prepared missions from the core FID mission. Such transitions may include the SFODB's assuming the role of a SOCCE and the SFODAs' conducting unilateral DA or SR missions.

(5) The level of the exercise "threat" should be based on the unit's threat analysis of its most likely JSOA and an estimate of the potential of the JSOA's threat for escalation during operations.

d. Support Requirements.

(1) Combine the requirements recommended for the STXs to determine general support requirements for this FTX.

(2) Add to the combined requirements any additional support for the planned methods of deployment and redeployment. Make the coordinations for these requirements IAW your unit and installation movement plans. Your unit movement officer can give you this information. Training exercise deployment and redeployment schemes should mirror, as closely as possible, these contingency unit movement plans.

4. Suggested Sequence of Tasks. Refer to the mission functional and supporting mission figures in Chapter 3 for the suggested sequence of task execution for this FTX. These figures illustrate the basic sequences for the SFODB in providing C^2 for the operational detachments. Some of the sequences illustrated have possible variations. Use the figures as a guide and list the desired execution sequence that will support your FTX scenario.

Figure 4-1. Sample SFODB FTX (continued).

4-5. Situational Training Exercises. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises that train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STXs included in this MTP give the SFODB commander information on training the smaller component tasks of a mission.

a. STXs perform the following important functions:

(1) They provide repetitive training on the smaller component tasks of a mission.
(2) They allow training to focus on identified weaknesses.
(3) They allow the SFODBs to practice the critical parts of a mission before practicing the entire mission.

b. STXs provide standardized exercise objectives, structure, and some suggestions. They do not, however, contain detailed scenarios. The unit must develop those scenarios. Review FM 25-101 for specific guidance on planning and conducting training exercises.

c. Figures 4-2 and 4-3 (page 4-9) provide sample SFODB STXs.

Special Forces Operational Detachment Bravo

STX: Plan and Prepare for an MSB

1. Objective. The objective of this STX is to train the SFODB within a garrison environment in planning and preparing for a FID mission. The STX provides practice in planning and preparing for task-organizing the SFODB to establish and operate an MSB that provides command, control, communications, and intelligence (C³I) and support for FID operations. It also provides practice in planning and preparing training materials and in presenting instruction in the HN language.

2. Interface. This STX interfaces with STX: Provide FID Mission Support.

3. Training.

  a. Training Tips.

    (1) Review FM 31-20, FM 25-101, FM 101-5, ARTEP 31-805-MTP, and unit SOPs.

    (2) Based on mission requirements, study CMF 18 soldiers' manuals for MOS-unique individual tasks.

    (3) Review notional materials for completeness and request additional information or guidance. The notional materials must support the desired STX scenario in detail. This material should also reflect, as closely as possible without violating operations security (OPSEC), those conditions that exist in the SFODB's area of operations.

    (4) Make sure personnel receive training on staff organization and section responsibilities before conducting this STX.

    (5) Identify individuals who require language training or refresher training, and conduct this training before executing this STX.

    (6) Conduct training on basic instructional techniques before executing this STX.

    (7) In a classroom or a team room, provide instructions or demonstrations on the use of interpreters to present instructions.

    (8) Make sure all SFOD members are proficient in supporting individual tasks and language skills.

    (9) In a classroom or a team room, provide instruction on the identification of training requirements to support the development of a POI.

    (10) Conduct training of the HN's language before executing this STX.

    (11) Use mini MAPEXs to rehearse typical tactical counterinsurgency (COIN) operations in which the HN forces might be involved to prepare SFOD members who are to act as unit advisors.

  b. Training Considerations and Requirements.

    (1) This STX may—
      (a) Be conducted as a follow-up to a practice alert.

Figure 4-2. Sample SFODB STX 1.

        (b) Be conducted in the company area, a suitable classroom, or a training area that will allow the training rehearsal to be in an environment that simulates the actual conditions the HN training or classes will be presented.

        (c) Be divided into phases (for example, mission analysis and planning, POI development, supporting training material and training aid development, and rehearsals).

        (d) Require training materials and schedules to be translated into the HN's language.

        (e) Require training rehearsals to be conducted in the HN's language or be conducted with the use of an interpreter.

        (f) Be conducted with an SFODB acting as the C^2 element.

    (2) During training, the leader must enforce those standards listed in Chapter 5 of this MTP. The SFODB must maintain those standards as the conditions become more realistic.

    (3) The unit can sustain overall FID mission proficiency by executing this STX and STX 2.

    (4) Training safety must be considered.

  c. Training Enhancers.

    (1) Use previous AARs and lessons learned to avoid repeating training oversights.

    (2) During the MAPEXs and class rehearsals, use role playing within the SFODB to practice cross-cultural difficulties that may be encountered.

    (3) Although the supporting tasks *Conduct Mission Planning, Conduct Premission Activities, and Deploy to the Operational Area* are written as distinct, separate T&EOs and the supporting missions in Chapter 3 show their execution as sequential, in actual practice their execution overlaps and becomes somewhat concurrent. The SFODB should, however, practice these tasks individually to prepare for the STXs. Individual practice will more easily allow problems with staff functions to be identified and corrected in an environment that lacks the time constraints normally associated with isolation and mission planning. The SFODB should execute one task to completion. Conduct an AAR and correct any identifiable problems with the products of that task; then, move to the next task and follow the same procedures using the products of the previous tasks.

    (4) Base the training materials developed for this STX on recurring, generic training. The SFODB may maintain the POI, lesson plans, training schedules, and training aids, or they may be sent to the battalion S3 for use as reference files for future real-world training missions.

    (5) An alternative, if this exercise will serve as preparation for STX 1, is to visit the unit that will provide the personnel to role play HN forces during STX 1. Determine with this unit's commander which of his unit's METL tasks or critical supporting individual tasks the SFODB could train; then translate this unit's training requirements into advisory assistance objectives specified to the SFODB.

    (6) Training in survivability tasks and OPSEC should be considered in the development of operational plans based on the real-world threat existing in the unit's area of responsibility.

    (7) Multiple SFODBs may be deployed in a sequential manner to facilitate the conduct of advisory assistance to the same notional HN unit. Each successive SFODB relieves the last and assumes responsibility for the mission. This practice allows the SF commander

Figure 4-2. Sample SFODB STX 1 (continued).

to train his unit to execute a FID mission hand-off. It also emphasizes the need for deployed SFODBs to produce accurate reports for use by other agencies. This need becomes apparent as SFODBs conducting premission activities base their planning and preparations on information provided by the deployed SFODBs.

4. General Situation.

a. The SFODB is alerted, isolated (if necessary), and directed to prepare for a FID mission. The FOB commander and staff (notional) provide a briefing for the alerted SFODB after it enters isolation. The SFODB (or another SFODB) acts as the C^2 element and supports the deploying SFODB by providing notional message traffic, or the SFODB conducts premission preparations while also receiving C^2 support from another SFODB (notional FOB). Once the SFODs complete operational planning and training material development, rehearsals and MAPEXs are conducted in the HN language. The SFODs then briefback the battalion commander and outloads for deployment. Training in NBC and OPSEC is based on the threat in the area of responsibility.

b. In the conduct of its FID mission, the SFODB must provide one of, or a variation or combination of, the following:

(1) With the proper augmentation, provide command, control, and support (communications, intelligence, logistical, PSYOP, and CA) for its subordinate SFODAs that are executing FID missions.

(2) Advise and assist a HN unit commander, his staff, and subordinate CS and CSS unit commanders for up to a brigade-sized unit during COIN operations. The HN unit's subordinate combat elements receive assistance from the SFODB's subordinate SFODAs.

(3) Conduct liaison functions with a major U.S. combat force. The SFODB's subordinate SFODAs are attached and are executing FID missions.

(4) Conduct a survey of the JSOA (task-organized survey team).

(5) Augment the staff of the FOB. In this capacity, the SFODB is part of the battalion. Training information for this function will be in ARTEP 31-805-MTP, Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Group and Battalion.

c. You should task organize and establish relationships according to your scenario's specific needs.

d. The estimated time needed to conduct tasks in a company STX is as follows:

Event*	Mission or Task	Per SFODB
1	Alert and Receive a Mission Briefing	2 Hours
2	Analyze the Mission and Identify Training and Advisory Requirements	10 Hours
3	Develop Operational Plans, Training Materials, and Training Aids	50 Hours
4	Conduct Rehearsals and MAPEXs	40 Hours

Figure 4-2. Sample SFODB STX 1 (continued).

5	Present Mission Briefback	2 Hours**
6	Conduct AAR	2 Hours
	Total Time	**106 Hours**

Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and training proficiency of the SFODB. This estimate is based on a 10-hour training day.

**Additional time may be required after the briefback to allow the SFODB to adjust its OPLAN and rebrief it.*

e. The SF commander should also remember that the need may arise during FID campaigns and operations for SFODs to conduct unilateral, joint, or combined DA or SR missions.

5. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Trainers and Evaluators. The SFODB commander conducts this exercise. Two evaluators per SFODB are recommended, preferably one commissioned officer and one NCO (E-7 or above, operations and intelligence [O&I] graduate). If sufficient personnel are not available to simulate the functions of an SFOB or FOB (staff, liaison element), the evaluators may also perform these duties. The evaluators need not be isolated with the SFODB; however, they are required to be present during all evaluated events. Additional personnel qualified in the HN language should be used to evaluate the correctness of translated materials, the presentation of instruction, and the execution of MAPEXs.

b. Training Area. An enclosed area about the size of a GP medium tent should be provided for the isolated SFOD. The area should be well lit, have good ventilation, and be dry (or allow for sufficient drainage using pallets, corrugated log surface, ditching, or a combination of these). Sufficient bunks or cots should be provided for all isolated individuals. In addition, chairs and field tables (or equivalent) should be provided at a minimum ratio of one chair per man and one table per two men. The isolation areas should allow the work areas and sleep areas to be separated. The individual SFOD areas should be dispersed, and entry into and around the areas must be strictly controlled to provide for OPSEC. If the SFOD is to be held in only partial isolation (a working isolation), the size requirement of the area may be reduced by one half. More than one SFOD may then use a large area divided by temporary partitions, and no bunks or cots will be needed. If specific HN training is part of the mission tasking, training areas that will allow the SFODB to rehearse this training in the same environment where the training is to be presented must be made available.

c. Consolidated Support Requirements.

(1) Field or Class-A rations must be supplied at the rate of three per man per day for all exercise participants. This amount may be reduced in partial isolation depending on the length of the training day.

(2) An established dining facility should provide an isolated eating area, or rations may be delivered to the isolated SFODB.

(3) Blackboards, easels, lecture pads, and other expendable administrative supplies are needed.
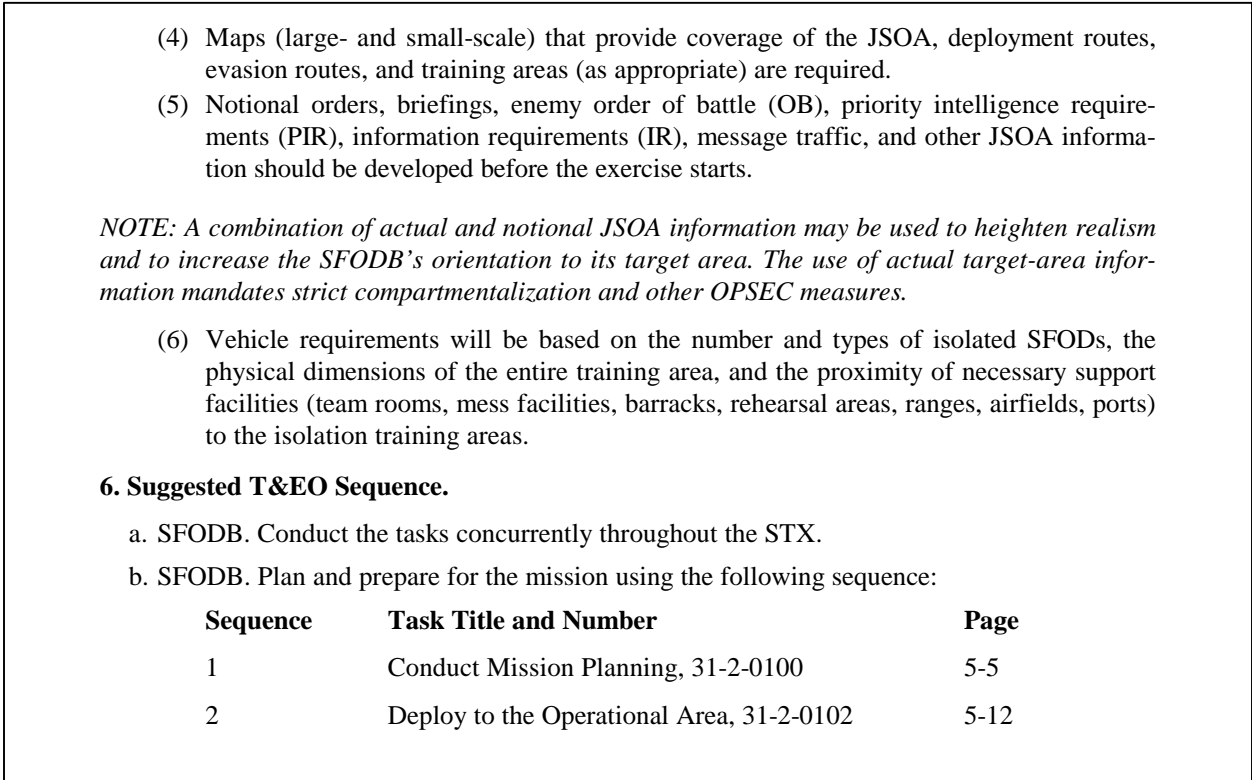
Figure 4-2. Sample SFODB STX 1 (continued).

(4) Maps (large- and small-scale) that provide coverage of the JSOA, deployment routes, evasion routes, and training areas (as appropriate) are required.

(5) Notional orders, briefings, enemy order of battle (OB), priority intelligence requirements (PIR), information requirements (IR), message traffic, and other JSOA information should be developed before the exercise starts.

NOTE: A combination of actual and notional JSOA information may be used to heighten realism and to increase the SFODB's orientation to its target area. The use of actual target-area information mandates strict compartmentalization and other OPSEC measures.

(6) Vehicle requirements will be based on the number and types of isolated SFODs, the physical dimensions of the entire training area, and the proximity of necessary support facilities (team rooms, mess facilities, barracks, rehearsal areas, ranges, airfields, ports) to the isolation training areas.

6. Suggested T&EO Sequence.

a. SFODB. Conduct the tasks concurrently throughout the STX.

b. SFODB. Plan and prepare for the mission using the following sequence:

Sequence	Task Title and Number	Page
1	Conduct Mission Planning, 31-2-0100	5-5
2	Deploy to the Operational Area, 31-2-0102	5-12

Figure 4-2. Sample SFODB STX 1 (continued).

Special Forces Operational Detachment Bravo
STX: Provide FID Mission Support

1. Objective. This STX trains the SFODB to provide C^2 for the operational detachments in a FID mission. It provides practice in establishing and operating an AOB for mission support and in controlling SFODAs that provide HN advisory assistance.

2. Interface. This STX interfaces with STX 1: Plan and Prepare an MSB.

3. Training.

a. Training Tips.

(1) Review FM 31-20, FM 25-101, FM 101-5, ARTEP 31-805-MTP, and unit SOPs.

(2) Based on mission requirements, study applicable common task tests, MOSs, and OFS (or MQS) manuals and make sure all necessary individual tasks can be performed to standard.

(3) Review notional materials for completeness and request additional information or guidance. The notional materials must support the desired STX scenario in detail. This

Figure 4-3. Sample SFODB STX 2.

material should also reflect, as closely as possible without violating OPSEC, those conditions that exist in the SFODB's area of operations.

(4) Make sure personnel receive training on staff organization and section responsibilities before conducting this STX.

(5) Conduct a visual reconnaissance of the training area and strive to approximate real-world conditions.

(6) Review the OPLAN developed during STX 1.

(7) Make sure support personnel who act as OPFOR (terrorist or insurgents) receive instruction on the organization, level of training, and tactics of the forces they are to portray.

b. Training Enhancers.

(1) The SFODB should be augmented with the actual key personnel from the units (or type units) that would normally operate with the SFODB when executing FID mission support. This SFODB should include not only the elements organic to the SF group but also those from units or agencies external to the SF group.

(2) If it is not possible to augment the SFODB with the actual key personnel from supporting elements, exercise supporting personnel should be carefully selected IAW their abilities to role play these key personnel. The exercise identities (or roles) of these "key" players will be determined by the external C³I, CS, and CSS relationships and SF battalion task organization established in the higher OPORD and the exercise scenario.

(3) The exercise HQ provides the notional message traffic needed to simulate the SFODB's higher, lower, and adjacent unit relationships. The emphasis of this notional message traffic should be to cause the SFODB to execute its required FID mission support functions and to coordinate for the provision of the remainder.

(4) This STX should incorporate a level of threat from HN insurgents that the SFODB must defend against. This threat may range from terrorist attacks to full-scale insurgent operations. The SFODB's defenses should be tested realistically based on the notional threat.

(5) Do not restrict staged terrorist or insurgent incidents to obvious bombings or ambushes. Strive to present these incidents in a realistic context. Incorporate indicators of potential terrorist or insurgent activities into the intelligence portion of the exercise scenario. Ensure that through proper intelligence processing these indicators would lead the SFODB to the correct conclusions about future OPFOR activities and that the application of these conclusions to mission planning would cause the correct defensive measures to be taken.

(6) Include training survivability tasks and OPSEC in all training based on an analysis of the threat existing in the unit's area of responsibility.

(7) If using OPFOR, use multiple integrated laser engagement system (MILES) equipment.

(8) Conduct STX 1 before conducting this STX.

(9) Consider developing multiechelon-echelon capabilities by involving subordinate SFODAs in the conduct of this STX. This may be done by—

  (a) Concurrent execution of this STX for the SFODB and an STX for the SFODAs.

  (b) Concurrent execution of a CPX developed from this STX for the SFODB with an STX for the SFODAs.

Figure 4-3. Sample SFODB STX 2.

      (c) Concurrent execution of this STX for the SFODB and CPXs or MAPEXs developed from an STX for the SFODAs.

  (10) Consider using a SFODB unassisted E&R to validate the SFODB's plans and preparations instead of normal redeployment for those SFODBs that have mastered the basic STX execution.

4. General Situation.

a. The SFODB has completed necessary operational planning and preparation needed to provide FID mission support (STX 1). The SFODB has deployed to the HN and is about to begin providing mission support to its subordinate SFODBs. Initial resource requirements are available; however, availability is subject to changes IAW METT-TC. This STX begins with the SFODB en route to the location specified for the AOB.

b. During the provision of mission support, the SFODB must—

  (1) Set up the AOB, including facilities, security, and organization.

  (2) Process orders and plans from the higher HQ into company-level orders disseminated to the subordinate SFODAs.

  (3) Process requests for CSS received from the SFODAs.

  (4) Process incoming and outgoing supplies and equipment.

  (5) Receive, process, and transmit message traffic using organic communications capabilities.

  (6) Process information to develop intelligence products disseminated to subordinate SFODAs and higher HQ.

  (7) Process requests for CS received from subordinate SFODAs.

  (8) Maintain liaison with HN and the higher in-country U.S. commander.

  (9) Control the execution of subordinate SFODA missions.

c. Those SFODBs that have a HN advisory assistance mission in addition to providing FID mission support should also practice STX 2.

d. The estimated time needed to conduct each STX task is a follows:

Event*	Task	Estimated Time Required
1	Establish an AOB	10 to 20 hours
2	Operate an AOB	40 to 60 hours
3	Prepare to Redeploy	3 to 5 hours
4	Conduct AAR	3 to 5 hours
	Total Time	**56 to 90 hours**

  Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit. The estimate is based on a 10-hour training day.

5. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum Evaluators. The SFODB commander conducts this exercise. One full-time evaluator is recommended, preferably a major or above with experience in SFODB and FOB operations during FID missions. Additional part-time evaluators should be used to evaluate

Figure 4-3. Sample SFODB STX 2 (continued).

the technical correctness of such activities as intelligence, communications, and logistics. If using OPFOR, also use evaluators or controllers.

b. Support Personnel. Use language-qualified personnel to act as key HN personnel and insurgents when possible. Although not a requirement, all available language-qualified personnel should be used. These personnel should be used to role play the HN personnel with whom the SFODB must deal. Depending on the exercise scenario, the trainer will determine the number of support personnel required and their notional identities. (See paragraph 3b, Training Enhancers, for an explanation of role players acting as augmentees to the SFODB.)

c. Training Area. The requirements for the AOB training site should be based on the conditions existing in the SFODB's area of operations. Depending on these requirements, the training site may be in a garrison-type area or a totally primitive area. The site, however, must be sufficiently large enough to permit the required stockpiling of supplies, to allow for the quartering of the SFODB (and attachments), and to have enough working space for C³I functions. If the SFODB must also execute air operations as part of FID mission support, the training area must also allow for the establishment of drop zones (DZs) and fixed or rotary winged aircraft landing zones (LZs).

d. Consolidated Support Requirements.

(1) Tentage, cots, tables, chairs, dunnage for storage of supplies, sand bags, concertina wire and other nonorganic supplies and equipment sufficient for the establishment of the AOB facilities. These supplies and equipment should be provided IAW the plans and preparations made by the SFODB in STX 1.

(2) Administrative supplies are required and should be provided IAW the plans and preparations made by the SFODB in STX 1.

(3) Ammunition and weapons will be required based on the exercise scenario, unit SOP for basic loads, and unit MTOE.

(4) MILES equipment will be required based on the types of individual weapons used and the potential for force-on-force engagements as dictated by the scenario.

(5) Vehicles and aircraft are required based on the exercise scenario. Transportation may also be helpful in moving small OPFOR, providing them necessary flexibility to simulate a realistic threat.

(6) Field or Class-A rations must be supplied at the rate of three per man per day for all exercise participants.

(7) Organic SFODB communications equipment is used to provide STX scenario-based communications requirements. Nonorganic communications equipment is needed based on STX administrative communications requirements such as evaluator-to-evaluator, evaluator-to-OPFOR controller, and exercise HQ-to-exercise elements.

(8) Provisions must be made for medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) based on the training area location and the organic medical support available.

6. Suggested T&EO Sequence.

Sequence	Task Title and Number	Page
1	Establish an Advanced Operational Base, 31-2-0103	5-15
2	Operate an Advanced Operational Base, 31-2-0104	5-18

Figure 4-3. Sample SFODB STX 2 (continued).

4-6. Safety. During any training exercise, soldiers and leaders must make safety a high priority. An effort to attain maximum realism may cause hazardous conditions and situations to arise. Trainers and evaluators make sure the training takes place safely to avoid accidents and injuries. Before exercises begin, leaders must brief all personnel on specific safety measures to observe during that particular training exercise.

4-7. Evaluations. The evaluation process is continuous. Therefore, the commander must plan evaluations for all training events and consider them as a way life in the unit. Training evaluation is integral to training management. Leaders at every level conduct evaluations.

    a. Evaluation of training measures the demonstrated ability of soldiers, leaders, and units to perform a task against the established standards. It is a snapshot, at a given time, on whether or not the task was conducted to standard under prescribed conditions.

    b. Leaders evaluate each training event during training execution. Planning for training must include resources (such as leader time, prerequisite training, evaluators, and equipment) to facilitate evaluation. These resources can have a strong positive or negative effect on the command climate in the unit.

    c. Leaders use evaluations to—

        (1) Provide feedback on training proficiency to those participating in the training event (using AARs).

        (2) Assess METL task proficiency.

        (3) Develop lessons learned for distribution throughout the United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM), United States Army Special Operations Command (USASOC), and the United States Army Special Forces Command (USASFC).

        (4) Shape future training plans.

        (5) Enhance leader development.

    d. Leaders can use formal, informal, internal, or external evaluations.

        (1) Informal evaluations are most commonly used at battalion level and below. They are—

           (a) Conducted by all leaders in the chain of command.

           (b) Performed continually.

           (c) Used to provide immediate feedback on training proficiency.

        (2) Formal evaluations are usually scheduled on the long- and short-range training calendars. These include CTC rotations, ARTEP evaluations, Expert Infantryman's Badge, and Expert Field Medical Badges. They are—

           (a) Sometimes unannounced, such as an emergency deployment readiness exercise.

           (b) Normally highlighted during quarterly training briefings and yearly training briefs.

           (c) Resourced with dedicated evaluators or OCs.

        (3) Internal evaluations are planned, resourced, and conducted by the unit undergoing the evaluation.

        (4) External evaluations are also planned and resourced. HQ two levels above the unit being evaluated normally conduct these evaluations. For example, USASOC evaluates SF groups, USASFC evaluates SF battalions, SF groups evaluate SFODBs, and SF battalions evaluate SFODAs.

        (5) These evaluations can be combined to meet the particular needs of the units or soldiers being evaluated. Figure 4-4 (page 4-14) describes the use of the different types of evaluations.

    e. Evaluators must also be tactically and technically proficient. They cannot evaluate all actions that occur during an exercise by following the T&EO checklist alone. Evaluators must use professional judgment in interpreting and applying T&EO standards to a given situation while considering the factors in the decision-making process and mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilians (METT-TC).

INFORMAL	
Internal	**External**
A function of unit leadership whenever training is conducted—for example, SFODA commanders check SFODA members rehearsing POIs for FID training.	Conducted by leaders visiting training of subordinate units—for example, CSM spot checks SFODA weapons training.
FORMAL	
Internal	**External**
Best suited for company-sized elements and below—for example, company commander evaluates his SFODAs' collective tasks, using MTP T&EOs.	Best suited for evaluation of SFOB-, FOB-, and AOB-level tasks—for example, USASFC or CTC OCs evaluate FOBs.

Figure 4-4. Use of types of evaluations.

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. General. This chapter contains the T&EOs for all the tasks an SFODB must perform to accomplish its overall critical wartime missions. Commanders use the T&EOs for training and internally evaluating their organizations. In addition, higher HQ uses the T&EOs as a formal evaluation of the unit's performance.

5-2. Structure.

    a. Figure 5-1 (page 5-2) lists the T&EOs as closely as possible in their normal order of execution. These T&EOs match the collective tasks and supporting missions listed in Chapter 2.

    b. The SF commander uses the survivability and concurrent tasks in this chapter to add realism to the ARTEP scenario. He also uses them to identify strengths and weaknesses in fundamental tasks. He adds these tasks at any time during the mission.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are the training objectives prepared for every collective task. These collective tasks support the SF unit's mission accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following components:

    a. *Element*. The element identifies the performer of the task.

    b. *Task*. A task is an event that has a start and a stop, is measurable, and supports a specific mission. The task number is in parentheses following the task title. This number identifies the task throughout the MTP.

    c. *References*. The references for each task are in parentheses following the task number. The primary reference is listed first and is underlined. It is the reference that contains the most information on the task.

    d. *Iteration*. Iteration identifies the number of times a task is performed and evaluated during training or an exercise. An *M* indicates when the task is performed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP)4.

    e. *Commander/Leader Assessment*. The assessment is the means the leadership uses to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

        (1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

        (2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

        (3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

    f. *Conditions*. The conditions component is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

    g. *Task Standards*.

        (1) The task standard states the performance criteria a unit must achieve to execute the task successfully. This overall standard should be the focus of training. Every soldier should understand it.

        (2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements.

h. *Task Steps and Performance Measures*. Task steps are actions or events the SF unit performs sequentially. Each task step identifies the leader, individual, unit, or element responsible for performing that step. An asterisk (*) identifies leader task steps. Performance measures identify how well the SF unit must perform the task for the desired outcome. Detailed measures are listed for each task step.

i. *GO and NO-GO Columns*. The evaluator uses these columns to record the results achieved in executing task steps. These two columns are located to the right of each task step.

j. *Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block*. This block gives the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as *GO*. It also gives the evaluator a means to rate the unit's demonstrated performance as a *GO* or a *NO-GO*. In addition, this block gives the leader a historical record for five training iterations.

k. *Supporting Individual Tasks*. This portion is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to perform the task correctly. Listed are the reference, task number, and task title.

l. *OPFOR Tasks*. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify *what* must be accomplished— not *how* it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the portrayed enemy.

5-4. Usage. The SF unit commander uses a T&EO individually to train a single task or, in sequence with other T&EOs, to train and evaluate a larger group of tasks, such as an FTX or an STX. The T&EOs are identified and arranged by supporting mission and, as closely as possible, in their normal order of execution.

5-5. List of Training and Evaluation Outlines.

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide C^2 for the Operational Detachments		
Conduct Mission Planning	31-2-0100	5-5
Conduct Premission Activities	31-2-0101	5-8
Deploy to the Operational Area	31-2-0102	5-12
Establish an Advanced Operational Base	31-2-0103	5-15
Operate an Advanced Operational Base	31-2-0104	5-18
Establish a SOCCE	31-2-0105	5-25
Operate as a SOCCE	31-2-0106	5-28
Facilitate Linkup Between Operational Detachments and General Purpose Forces	31-2-0107	5-30
Redeploy to a Specified Location	31-2-0108	5-32

Figure 5-1. List of SFODB T&EOs.

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Provide Operational Support to the SFOB/FOB		
Establish an Isolation Facility	31-2-0109	5-36
Operate an Isolation Facility	31-2-0110	5-38
Execute SF Operations		
Prepare the Isolation Area	31-2-0111	5-44
Prepare for the Mission	31-2-0112	5-46
Debrief an Asset	31-2-0113	5-51
Prepare the SFODB E&R Plan	31-2-0114	5-53
Present a Briefback	31-2-0115	5-56
Sterilize the Isolation Area	31-2-0116	5-57
Infiltrate the Operational Area by Land	31-2-0117	5-58
Infiltrate by Air Operations	31-2-0118	5-60
Infiltrate by Waterborne Operations	31-2-0119	5-62
Establish Contact	31-2-0120	5-64
Establish an Area Command Group and Staff	31-2-0121	5-66
Develop the Area Complex	31-2-0122	5-68
Plan Interdiction Operations	31-2-0123	5-70
Conduct Linkup Operations	31-2-0124	5-72
Demobilize the Guerrilla Force	31-2-0125	5-74
Conduct Exfiltration by Land	31-2-0126	5-76
Conduct Exfiltration by Air Operations	31-2-0127	5-79
Conduct Exfiltration by Waterborne Operations	31-2-0128	5-81
Initiate Evasion	31-2-0133	5-83
Evade	31-2-0134	5-85
Survivability Tasks		
Prepare for Operations in an NBC Environment	03-3-R201	5-88
React to a Chemical or Biological Attack	03-3-R202	5-91
Operate in an NBC Environment	03-3-R313	5-93
Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance	03-2-R309	5-96
Conduct Chemical Survey	03-3-R310	5-99
Perform Chemical or Biological Decontamination	03-3-R224	5-102
React to a Terrorist or an Insurgent Incident	31-2-0135	5-105

Figure 5-1. List of SFODB T&EOs (continued).

TASK TITLE	TASK NUMBER	PAGE
Evacuate Casualties	08-2-R316	5-107
Use Passive Air Defense Measures	44-2-R307	5-110
Take Small Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	44-2-R308	5-112
Evacuate the Advanced Operational Base	31-2-0136	5-114
Concurrent Tasks		
Provide Intelligence Support to SF Operations	31-2-0129	5-116
Coordinate for Combat Support	31-2-0130	5-120
Integrate Civil-Military Operations	31-2-0131	5-122
Integrate Psychological Operations	31-2-0132	5-126

Figure 5-1. List of SFODB T&EOs (continued).

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT MISSION PLANNING (31-2-0100) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, FM 31-20, AND CGSC ST 100-9)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been alerted and has received a mission briefing, including pertinent portions of international treaties and operations agreements, broad U.S. national goals and specific U.S. political objectives, and the higher commander's OPORD. The SFODB may also receive the results of an on-site JSOA survey conducted before the detachment's alert. If the SFODB is to relieve an already deployed SFODB, the SFODB to be relieved provides a liaison, situation reports (SITREPs), AARs, and COIN mission and operations debriefing reports. The SFODB may go into either complete or partial isolation, depending on the level of classification of mission-related information and the need for compartmentation. The isolation area is in a secure garrison environment. The SFODB has all organic detachment personnel and equipment necessary for mission analysis. The SFODB is task organized for coordinating and planning special staff functions IAW the unit SOP. The SFODB's external C^3I, CS, and CSS relationships are established for the planning process. However, these relationships are subject to change IAW METT-TC. Current intelligence and information on the JSOA is available to the SFODB. Soldiers may perform some iterations of this task in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB identifies the mission's objectives IAW the higher commander's OPORD. It prepares initial planning guidance, including the SFODB commander's intent, the restated SFODB mission, the essential tasks list, and the SFODB's initial commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs) and PIR. The SFODB writes an OPORD that satisfies all planning requirements necessary for the SFODB's mission execution IAW the higher OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB conducts mission analysis IAW FM 101-5 and CGSC ST 100-9 (O4-9106.01-0012, O4-9106.01-0047).
   a. Identifies facts and assumptions.
   b. Identifies specified tasks.
   c. Identifies implied tasks.
   d. Identifies mission-essential tasks.
   e. Identifies the higher commander's mission and intent.
 	
 TRAINING NOTE: SFODBs designated as SOCCEs must consider the mission of their own higher HQ as well as the mission and intent of the supported commander.
 	
   f. Identifies limitations (constraints and restrictions).
   g. Develops the commander's restated mission.
   h. Issues the commander's planning guidance.
   i. Issues the WARNORD (071-326-5503).
 	
 2. The SFODB prepares the estimate of the situation IAW FM 101-5 and CGSC ST 100-9 (301-349-4330).
   a. Analyzes the effects of weather (301-349-2812).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Analyzes the effects of terrain (301-349-2802).		
c. Determines the enemy threat (301-349-2803, 301-349-2806, 301-349-4350).		
d. Analyzes the friendly situation.		
e. Develops task organization.		
f. Studies the mission's risk.		
g. Identifies CS requirements.		
h. Identifies personnel requirements.		
i. Identifies logistic requirements (O4-9143.02-0013).		
j. Identifies medical requirements.		
k. Identifies communications requirements.		
l. Develops a time schedule.		
3. The SFODB develops COAs.		
a. Develops different COAs based on the commander's restated mission and initial planning guidance.		
b. Analyzes each COA.		
c. Develops event templates (301-349-2808, 301-349-2811).		
d. Develops decision support templates (301-349-2807, 301-349-2810).		
e. Compares COAs (wargame).		
4. The SFODB develops the OPORD.		
a. Briefs the SFODB commander on the COAs and recommends the best COA. The commander reaches a decision.		
b. Develops the concept of the operation.		
c. Prepares the OPORD (113-611-5014, 301-349-4340).		
d. Submits a statement of requirements to the supporting element (Battalion S4, Group S4, Theater Army Special Operations Support Command, SOC J4).		
e. Submits transportation requests and load plans.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
Reference	**Task Number**	**Task Title**
	331-201-0022	Plan JSOA Logistic Support Requirements
STP 31-18E34-SM-TG	113-611-5014	Prepare the Signal Annex to the Operation Order
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9106.01-0012	Describe the Mission Planning Process
	O4-9106.01-0047	Identify the Procedures for Analyzing a Mission
	301-349-2802	Determine Overlay Requirements Using the Terrain Factor Analysis Matrix
	301-349-2806	Develop a Situation Template
	301-349-2807	Identify Decision Points Along Each Avenue of Approach
	301-349-2808	Develop an Event Template Based on a Situation Template
	301-349-2810	Identify Target Areas of Interest
	301-349-2811	Develop an Event Analysis Matrix for Each Mobility Corridor
	301-349-2812	Determine Weather Overlay Requirements
	301-349-4330	Prepare the Intelligence Estimate
	301-349-4340	Prepare the Intelligence Annex (to an Operation Order)
	301-349-4350	Develop Doctrinal Templates for Threat Evaluation

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT PREMISSION ACTIVITIES (31-2-0101) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is located in garrison or has deployed to the theater of operations with the FOB or higher HQ. The SFODB has received a mission, including the higher commander's mission and intent. The SFODB has begun mission analysis and established the task organization, external C^3I, CS, and CSS relationships. Current intelligence and information on the JSOA is available. Soldiers may perform some iterations of this task in MOPP4. The SFODB may conduct this task concurrently with *Conduct Mission Planning (31-2-0100)* and portions of *Deploy to the Operational Area (31-2-0102).*

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB completes premission activities IAW the OPORD, unit SOPs, and pertinent regulations.

TRAINING NOTE: The SFODB designated to operate as a SOCCE should establish liaison with the supported GPF, the isolated detachments, and the FOB immediately after the requirement has been identified. This early liaison is necessary to facilitate synchronization of the mission planning effort and operational procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The SFODB commander conducts premission activities (O4-9143.04-0021).		
a. Provides C^2 for the detachment.		
b. Ensures the SFODB completes mission preparation IAW the OPORD of the higher commander and the SFODB.		
c. States the priority of effort.		
d. Approves tentative changes to the SFODB OPORD if the changes satisfy requirements IAW the commander's intent, identified mission objectives, and the higher commander's OPORD.		
e. Ensures clarification of all legal questions.		
2. The SFODB staff conducts premission activities.		
a. Follows up on previous requests for additional resources or support not already delivered.		
b. Contacts supporting agencies IAW established procedures to determine the status of their requests.		
c. Considers alternate COAs when supporting agencies fail to provide the required resources or support.		
d. Routes functional area information requests to the other staff sections through the SFODB S3.		
e. Routes IRs through the SFODB S2.		
f. Modifies previously developed estimates and plans IAW the latest information available.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Updates, through the SFODB S3, the CCIR list IAW the latest information available and their needs for additional CCIR arising from modified estimates and plans.		
*3. The SFODB executive officer (XO) ensures mission preparation is IAW the event-time plan.		
a. Resolves identified difficulties through additional coordination.		
b. Informs the SFODB commander of difficulties in mission preparation that will not allow for mission execution IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
c. Ensures coordination of all changes to the OPORD approved by the SFODB commander.		
d. Ensures all required passports and visas are on hand IAW AR 600-200.		
e. Ensures preparation for overseas movement requirements are met IAW AR 220-10, AR 612-2, and the unit SOP.		
f. Follows up all previous requests for additional personnel and administrative, morale, and disciplinary support IAW the SFODB OPLAN.		
g. Informs the commander of any problems in the administrative preparation of the SFODB for deployment.		
*4. The SFODB S2 conducts premission activities.		
a. Conducts intelligence preparation of the battlespace (IPB).		
b. Supervises SFODB requests for, and dissemination of, intelligence IAW the commander's PIR and IR and the intelligence collection plan.		
c. Updates the enemy situation using the latest available information and intelligence.		
d. Informs the entire SFODB of changes in the situation that will affect planned mission execution.		
e. Develops, implements, and monitors the SFODB intelligence collection plans, including updating the commander's PIR and IR, conducting an area assessment, and requesting additional intelligence support.		
f. Monitors the SFODB OPSEC measures and plans to make sure they effectively counter the anticipated threat IAW the current situation.		
*5. The SFODB S3 conducts premission activities.		
a. Disseminates the SFODB OPORD, or applicable portions of it, to higher HQ staff for tentative approval.		
b. Disseminates the SFODB plan to SFODB personnel, and as required, to subordinates.		
c. Incorporates any approved changes into the SFODB OPLAN.		
d. Disseminates all approved OPORD changes to the SFODB.		
e. Assigns mission briefback tasks to SFODB personnel.		
f. Ensures SFODB predeployment training and rehearsals are conducted IAW the SFODB OPORD, unit SOPs, and the time-event plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Ensures weapons are test fired, as required.		
h. Coordinates for theater CINC directives and policies on preparing the Special Forces Evasion and Recovery Plan.		
*6. The SFODB S4 conducts premission activities (O4-9143.02-0013).		
a. Inspects, accounts for, and ensures the serviceability of required supplies and equipment (less medical and communications supplies and equipment) in the SFODB's custody.		
b. Stockpiles additional required supplies and equipment IAW the SFODB OPLAN, including the basic load of ammunition to support follow-on or contingency missions.		
c. Makes sure required supplies and equipment in the SFODB's custody are pre-pared for shipment to the OA IAW the regulations or TMs that apply to the method of shipment and the transporting agency.		
d. Follows up all previous requests for additional logistic resources or support IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
e. Informs the SFODB XO of any logistics problems in preparing the SFODB for deployment.		
7. The SFODB CE element conducts premission activities.		
a. Obtains the cryptographic materials, signal operation instructions (SOI), and additional related materials IAW the higher commander's and the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Inspects communications-electronics equipment, both organic and attached, to ensure all necessary equipment is available.		
c. Conducts function tests of communications equipment and systems as required.		
d. Informs the SFODB XO of any communications problems in preparing for the SFODB mission.		
*8. The SFODB medical NCO conducts premission planning.		
a. Makes sure SFODB personnel meet medical and dental requirements IAW AR 612-2 and unit SOPs.		
b. Makes sure immunizations are current IAW AR 40-562 and unit SOPs.		
c. Makes sure SFODB personnel receive any required medical or dental treatment identified.		
d. Follows up all previous requests for additional medical resources or support IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
e. Accounts for and inspects the serviceability of the required medical supplies and equipment.		
f. Informs the SFODB XO of any health services problems in preparing for the SFODB mission.		
9. The SFODB conducts liaison activities and continues premission coordination.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Conducts rehearsals and updates POI when the SFODB is designated to establish an MSB for FID. b. Continues coordination with the supported GPF when the SFODB is designated to establish a SOCCE. c. Identifies liaison personnel to remain with the FOB and isolated detachments in support of SOCCE operations. d. Monitors mission planning and preparation of isolated detachments for either FID or operations in support of a GPF. * Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	331-201-0022	Plan JSOA Logistic Support Requirements
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9143.04-0021	Accomplish Premission Activities

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: DEPLOY TO THE OPERATIONAL AREA (31-2-0102) (<u>FM 31-20</u>, FM 34-36, AND FM 34-130)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been declared deployable by the SF battalion (or higher) commander, and the execution of its OPLAN has been ordered. The SFODB has all organic, assigned, and attached personnel and equipment. All accompanying supplies have been received and necessary shipping container components are on hand. Air and ground material-handling equipment and transportation assets are available IAW the SFODB OPORD and unit movement plans. The SFODB's C^{3}I, CS, and CSS relationships are firmly established for deployment; however, they are subject to change IAW METT-TC. OA information and intelligence are available to the SFODB IAW coordinations made during mission preparations. The level of the threat is equal to or greater than that specified in the higher OPORD. It may vary during the phases of deployment. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB arrives at its AO with all mission-essential personnel and equipment IAW the SFODB OPORD, and OPSEC is not violated.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB prepares for deployment.		
a. Conducts a briefback to the SFOB or FOB commander.		
b. Synchronizes the deployment effort with the battalion staff and support company commander.		
c. Monitors requests for deployment support submitted to the battalion staff and support company commander.		
d. Establishes a deployment timetable IAW the unit movement officer and the S3.		
e. Awaits deployment notification.		
f. Updates planning and estimates continually based on current information.		
g. Maintains approved movement plans and SOPs.		
h. Deploys advanced party personnel (when applicable).		
i. Verifies the notification, initiates recall, and establishes security as necessary after alert.		
j. Prepares for overseas movement.		
k. Coordinates with supporting elements for logistical requirements.		
l. Initiates actions to ensure disposition of files, classified documents, installation property, privately owned vehicles, and individual property.		
m. Performs specialized requirements for equipment deployment, such as documentation of hazardous cargo.		
n. Appoints rear detachment commander.		
o. Initiates family support plan.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
2. The SFODB conducts deployment.		
a. Executes movement of personnel and equipment IAW the deployment timetable.		
b. Prepares personnel and equipment for movement to the marshaling area.		
c. Conducts palletization of equipment.		
d. Prepares manifests and sensitive items equipment lists.		
e. Conducts movement to the port of embarkation.		
f. Assists in the joint inspection of vehicles and equipment.		
g. Accounts for all personnel and equipment before departure.		
h. Deploys to a port of debarkation or a specified location.		
i. Links up with advanced party personnel.		
3. The SFODB transloads from the deployment aircraft to ground transportation in the HN.		
a. Reports the SFOD's arrival in the HN IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Ensures personnel security IAW the detachment SOP and OPORD.		
c. Maintains accountability for SFODB supplies and equipment.		
d. Assists Air Force personnel in handling SFODB equipment, as requested.		
e. Briefs ground support personnel (truck drivers, bus drivers, forklift operators) on routes, equipment handling procedures, convoy procedures, and the actions to take in the event of a terrorist or insurgent incident.		
f. Clears HN customs, as required.		
*4. The SFODB S2 obtains an intelligence update at the destination airfield.		
a. Receives the update on the current terrorist or insurgent situation upon arrival IAW coordinations made during mission preparations.		
b. Disseminates changes in the situation IAW the unit SOP.		
c. Verbally provides to the SFODB commander and S3 an analysis of the significant changes to the situation.		
d. Verbally provides to the SFODB commander and S3 an estimate of alternatives or changes to present COAs (for example, the security measures during movement) IAW the analysis.		
5. The SFODB coordinating and special staff sections maintain their functional areas' portions of the SFODB data base (information files).		
a. Maintain data base portions IAW the unit SOP.		
b. Request information necessary to satisfy CCIR from applicable sources.		
c. Route functional area information requests IAW the unit SOP through the SFODB S3 to other staff sections.		
d. Identify information received that satisfies CCIR.		
e. Route IR through the S2.		
f. Modify previously developed estimates and plans IAW the latest information available.		
g. Notify other concerned staff sections of modified estimates and plans.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Notify other concerned (higher, lower, or adjacent) staff sections of information, as it is identified, that satisfies their IR.
 i. Update, through the SFODB S3, the SFODB CCIR list IAW the latest information available and requirements for additional CCIR that arise from modified estimates and plans.
 	
 *6. The SFODB S2 executes functional duties.
    a. Continually updates the IPB prepared in predeployment IAW FM 34-130 and FM 34-36.
    b. Supervises the dissemination of intelligence and other operationally pertinent information within the SFODB and, as applicable, to higher, lower, or adjacent concerned units or agencies.
    c. Monitors the implementation of the SFODB intelligence collection plans, including updating the commander's PIR/IR, conducting area assessment, and coordinating for additional intelligence support.
 	
 *7. The SFODB commander and S3 issue a fragmentary order (FRAGO), as required.
    a. Assess alternatives or changes to present deployment COAs IAW METT-TC and the detachment S2's revised intelligence estimate.
    b. Select alternative COAs or changes to present COAs based on the assessment, as applicable.
    c. Develop a FRAGO for selected alternatives or changes.
    d. Disseminate a FRAGO to all detachment members.
 	
 8. The SFODB moves from the point of debarkation to its final destination.
    a. Follows convoy routes specified in the SFODB OPORD.
    b. Conducts convoy procedures IAW the unit SOP and SFODB OPORD.
    c. Ensures SFODB personnel remain oriented and alert during the movement by disseminating checkpoints and designating observation duties.
    d. Reports the SFODB's arrival in its JSOA IAW the SFODB OPORD.
 	
 Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: ESTABLISH AN ADVANCED OPERATIONAL BASE (31-2-0103) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Upon receipt of a mission tasking order, the SFODB deploys into the supported CINC's AOR to establish and operate the AOB. The SFODB will be directed to deploy by air, rail, sea, convoy, or a combination. The AOB is in a secure location. The threat level is as specified in the higher OPORD. Portions of this task can be performed in MOPP4. The methods of communications will vary, but they must be installed, operated, and maintained IAW the SFODB's capabilities. In most situations, the SFODB will be augmented. In some situations, the SFODB will provide for C^3I for deployed SFODAs.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB establishes a base that has the capability to provide C^3I and to support operational detachments IAW the requirements specified in the SFODB OPORD. The SFODB establishes procedures to facilitate intra-agency coordination and to synchronize operations as appropriate. Force protection measures are established.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB(-) performs advanced party tasks.		
a. Identifies the higher in-country commander.		
b. Briefs the higher in-country commander on the planned execution of the AO survey and the required preparations for the main body.		
c. Obtains additional guidance from the in-country commander, such as rules of engagement (ROE), general noncombatant evacuation operations (NEO) procedures, and communications plan.		
d. Confirms or establishes procedures for CS and CSS with the higher in-country commander.		
e. Receives the main body.		
2. The SFODB establishes an AOB.		
a. Organizes into an operations center (OPCEN), a signal center (SIGCEN), and a support center (SPTCEN).		
b. Establishes internal and external communications.		
(1) Establishes a signal site for 24-hour operations.		
(2) Establishes voice, data, PROCOMM, RATT, HF, UHF, and VHF communications with higher and other HQ.		
(3) Plans for emergency destruction of cryptographic materials and messages.		
c. Designates areas and facilities for mess, latrines, parking, and living.		
d. Inspects facilities that will be used by the SFODB.		
e. Establishes security procedures and a base defense plan. Enforces OPSEC and implements force-protection measures.		
f. Develops a fire support (FS) plan for current and future assets.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

g. Plans for emergency evacuations. Commander/S3—
     (1) Develops an emergency evacuation plan.
     (2) Disseminates an emergency evacuation plan to all U.S. personnel.
     (3) Develops an emergency destruction plan.
     (4) Safeguards sensitive equipment and information.
     (5) Issues FRAGO (as required).
   h. Deploys M8 chemical alarms when necessary.
 	
3. The SFODB establishes the command relationship with the next higher in-country U.S. commander if he is not in the SFODB's normal chain of command.
   a. Identifies the higher in-country commander.
   b. Briefs the higher in-country commander on the planned execution of the SFODB mission.
   c. Obtains from the higher in-country commander any additional guidance for the mission's execution. As a minimum, this guidance includes confirmation on the ROE, the general scheme of maneuver of the SFODB's E&R, and the limitations on the SFODB commander for changing the planned mission execution without obtaining prior approval from the higher in-country commander.
   d. Confirms or establishes communications procedures between the higher in-country commander and the SFODB.
   e. Confirms or establishes procedures for obtaining CS and CSS from the higher in-country commander.
   f. Confirms or establishes procedures for obtaining intelligence support from the higher in-country commander.
 	
4. The SFODB establishes direct working relationships with their next higher in-country or out-of-country supporting section or unit for their functional areas of responsibility (S1-9150.50-3001).
   a. Identifies the location of the supporting section or unit.
   b. Contacts the supporting section or unit to determine the limitations of the available support and the expected reaction time between the initiation of the support request and its fulfillment.
   c. Establishes communications procedures between the supporting section or unit and the SFODA, including, as a minimum, alternate and emergency procedures for C^2, all available CS, and MEDEVAC.
   d. Establishes procedures for testing the primary, alternate, and emergency communications for C^2, all available CS, and MEDEVAC with the supporting unit or section.
   e. Tests procedures for C2, all available CS, and MEDEVAC, and the primary, alternate, and emergency communications procedures with the supporting unit or section.
 	
5. The SFODB establishes procedures to facilitate interagency coordination and to synchronize operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Identifies the location of the concerned HN or U.S. agency. b. Contacts the concerned agency to establish initial coordinations. c. Exchanges information and intelligence. d. Establishes communications procedures. e. Establishes other coordination protocols, as necessary. f. Incorporates newly established or changed procedures into the SFODB's plans for mission execution.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18II-MQS	S1-9150.50-3001	Advise on Host Nation Operations

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: OPERATE AN ADVANCED OPERATIONAL BASE (31-2-0104) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has received a mission and deployed to the JSOA. The AOB is established for 24-hour operations, and force protection measures are established IAW the OPORD. External C^3I and working relationships with the next higher U.S. commander are established. All mission-essential personnel and equipment are present IAW the OPORD. The threat condition may vary IAW available current intelligence. Some portions of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: After establishing the AOB, the SFODB operates the facility to extend the FOB's C^2 of deployed SFODAs. When required, the AOB provides C^3I for SFODAs (primarily during FID missions), conducts transloading of deploying SFODAs, and coordinates for aircraft refueling. The AOB also provides a secure rest area for deploying SFODAs and aircrews, assists in final planning, monitors the status of deploying units and other assets, maintains secure communications with the SFOB/FOB, and reconstitutes, isolates, and infiltrates SFODAs when directed and properly augmented.

TRAINING NOTE: This task has several subtasks: Operate a Launch and Recovery Site, Operate an MSB for FID, Operate a Radio Relay Site, and Conduct Noncombatant Evacuation Operations. All of the other subtasks can be incorporated into those subtasks. Each AOB will have different missions initially, and other missions may develop during the course of the training.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB effects C^2.
  a. The command group coordinates staff activities.
  b. The AOB director directs staff functions.
  c. The OPCEN makes sure situation maps (SITMAPs) and management charts are posted and updated.
  d. The S2 integrates intelligence into current operations and provides intelligence support to deployed SFODAs as appropriate (301-349-2802, 301-349-2806, 301-349-2807, 301-349-2808, 301-349-4210, 301-349-4220, 301-349-4320).
  e. The S3 integrates enemy and friendly information into current operations.
  f. The S3 coordinates with adjacent, higher, and subordinate HQ as required.
  g. The FS officer integrates CS into current operations as required.
  h. The SPTCEN integrates CSS capabilities into current operations.
    (1) Provides CSS for the AOB.
    (2) Provides CSS for deployed SFODs.
  i. The SIGCEN maintains internal and external communications.
    (1) Logs all incoming and outgoing messages by date-time group (331-916-0522).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Expedites all message traffic to the users.		
(3) Uses proper precedence and classification procedures IAW SOI.		
(4) Performs required services and preventive maintenance on all radio and generator equipment.		
(5) Keeps all transmissions as short as possible while using the most secure and reliable means available.		
(6) Recognizes and takes appropriate action if electronic countermeasures (ECM) are implemented against the AOB (113-573-5002).		
(7) Transmits meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference messages as appropriate (113-573-6001).		
(8) Safeguards all communications security (COMSEC) equipment and material.		
(9) Maintains redundancy with communications system.		
2. The SFODB updates the current situation and controls future mission planning.		
a. Supervises execution of current operations.		
b. Coordinates CS.		
c. Coordinates CSS.		
3. The SFODB establishes the AOB as an MSB for FID.		
TRAINING NOTE: The SFODB has arrived in the HN. Local conditions may require the SFODB to confirm or establish its in-country and external C^3I, CS, and CSS relationships from outside the AO. These assets may also be different in the different locations requiring the SFODB to conduct decentralized coordination to accomplish these tasks for sustainment. The SFODB may relieve another SFODB that was already operating an AOB in support of an ongoing FID mission.		
a. The incoming SFODB relieves the outgoing SFODB (where applicable).		
(1) Verifies obstacle locations and receives minefield records.		
(2) Receives range cards, target lists, and FS overlays.		
(3) Receives the IPB and updates its database (information files) using information from the SFODB to be relieved.		
(4) Conducts mutual inventories of equipment and supplies to be received from the SFODB to be relieved.		
(5) Reviews the outgoing SFODB's FID training records.		
(6) Maintains, as nearly as possible, normal patterns of activity during the relief.		
b. The incoming SFODB commander supervises the relief.		
(1) Places his SFODB under the operational control (OPCON) of the SFODB to be relieved, if direct fire contact with the enemy is gained during the relief and he has not yet assumed responsibility for the mission.		
(2) Assumes OPCON of the SFODB to be relieved, if direct fire contact with the enemy is gained during the relief and he has assumed responsibility for the mission.		
(3) Assumes responsibility for the mission when two-thirds of his SFODB is ready to begin the execution of the FID support mission and he is satisfied with the establishment of communications for external C^3I, CS, and CSS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The SFODB evaluates HN forces.		
a. Consolidates training reports, AARs, and mission debriefings to produce a list of deficiencies without redundancy or closely related items.		
b. Identifies HN personnel in key positions who require additional leadership or other functional duty training.		
c. Reviews current THREATCON to determine impact on HN performance.		
d. Briefs counterparts on identified deficiencies and threat impact to establish understanding.		
e. Encourages counterparts to participate in identifying additional training objectives or modifications to HN SOPs.		
f. Identifies new tasks specified or implied by the higher in-country commander.		
5. The SFODB commands and controls FID operations.		
a. Receives periodic SITREPs from SFODAs conducting the training.		
b. Monitors execution of the SFODA missions.		
c. Reviews SFODA POIs and training events.		
d. Maintains constant liaison with HN counterparts.		
6. The SFODB plans for future operations.		
a. Develops plans and orders for all specified "be prepared" missions from OPORD.		
b. Updates all plans and orders continually IAW changes in METT-TC.		
c. Coordinates tentatively for support with applicable supporting units or sections.		
d. Coordinates all actions to synchronize SF operations and those of other concerned HN or U.S. agencies.		
e. Disseminates information to subordinates IAW unit SOPs.		
f. Involves HN counterparts in the planning process to the maximum extent possible.		
7. The SFODB modifies its plans for FID mission C^2 and support, as necessary.		
a. Selects modified COAs to be followed and orders plans to be prepared or finalized for them.		
b. Prepares and finalizes plans for FID mission support.		
c. Briefs the training assessment and training plans to the SFODB commander.		
d. Obtains the SFODB commander's approval or disapproval the finalized plans and receives additional planning guidance.		
e. Notifies the higher in-country U.S. commander of any significant changes in the FID mission.		
8. The SFODB enforces OPSEC.		
a. Ensures the working area/building is secured with a single point of entry.		
b. Develops an access roster of HN personnel.		
c. Maintains sensitive/classified waste containers. Burns or shreds sensitive waste daily.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Conducts counterintelligence (CI) inspections as needed.		
9. The SFODB implements force-protection projection measures for the AOB and the SFODA FID locations (071-331-0820).		
a. Fortifies all positions (quarters, communications, medical, command) with any available means while maintaining the desired low visibility (051-202-1363, 071-326-5703, 071-326-5704, 071-326-5705).		
b. Maintains an SFODB internal guard system with a minimum of one SFODB member awake, aware of the location of all other SFODB members, and ready to react to an emergency by following the alert plan and starting defensive actions.		
c. Maintains an SFODB internal alert plan that will notify all SFODB members of an emergency.		
d. Maintains communications with all subordinate SFODA members deployed outside the immediate area controlled by the SFODB main body.		
e. Establishes plans for immediate SFODB defensive actions in the event of an insurgent or terrorist attack or a loss of HN rapport leading to an increased likelihood of hostile acts.		
f. Updates CONPLANs for AOB emergency displacement and the uninterrupted essential C^3I and support of the FID mission.		
g. Disseminates any changes in CONPLANs to all subordinates as FRAGOs.		
h. Establishes mutual plans with any U.S. or HN units collocated with the SFODB for defensive actions in the event of an insurgent or terrorist attack.		
i. Rehearses, using a briefback as a minimum, an SFODB alert, and notification procedures.		
j. Coordinates with any units collocated with the SFODB for the conduct of mutual full-force rehearsals of defensive plans; and as a minimum, conducts an AOB internal rehearsal.		
10. The SFODB operates the AOB as a launch and recovery base.		
TRAINING NOTE: When the AOB operates as an intermediate staging base (ISB), it expands the C^2 of the SFOB and FOB by maintaining continuous contact with the deploying SFODAs. In this capacity, the SFODB is the last element "to put friendly hands" on the deploying SFODAs. The AOB will provide any intelligence updates, weather reports, or other vital information that may have happened during SFODA transit from the SFOB and FOB to the AOB before actual infiltration.		
a. Establishes C^2 of the AOB area.		
b. Employs physical and operational security measures.		
c. Establishes and maintains liaison with the airbase command section, port authorities, and HN officials as necessary.		
d. Establishes and maintains communications with higher units (country team, JUSMAG, joint civil-military operations [CMO] task force, or joint task force as appropriate) (331-916-0016).		
e. Coordinates for transloading operations, including refueling, parking, loading and unloading, and maintenance before the aircraft arrive.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

f. Establishes the AOB discreetly with minimum visibility to maintain OPSEC and to enhance local security.
 	
    g. Provides compartmented rest areas for aircrews and deploying SFODAs.
 	
    h. Provides any limited medical, logistical, or other services for transiting personnel (081-833-4498, 081-833-4500).
 	
    i. Receives elements (SFODA and resupply) and supports deployment into the JSOA.
      (1) OPCEN staff provides planning, preparation, coordination, and intelligence support and disseminates new or revised operational requirements to the deploying SFODAs.
      (2) SIGCEN provides planning, preparation, coordination, COMSEC, and maintenance support.
      (3) SPTCEN provides CSS (supply, transportation, medical, and maintenance) and secures remain-overnight site (if required).
 	
    j. Provides accurate and current status reports to the SFOB and FOB as required.
 	
    k. Receives SFODAs after exfiltration, conducts initial debriefing, and transfers SFODAs to the SFOB/FOB.
 	
11. The SFODB prepares to conduct NEO from the AOB.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: If the HN and the U.S. Embassy can no longer guarantee the safety of U.S. citizens, the AOB may have to assist in their evacuation. NEO planning is the responsibility of the U.S. Embassy's regional security officer (RSO). The SFODB will, however, render any and all assistance. NEO may be conducted under a variety of conditions: permissive, uncertain, or hostile (IAW Joint Pub 1-02). This collateral activity could become a mission for the deployed AOB. The SFODB should plan for NEO as a contingency operation. The safety of U.S. citizens must be the primary concern during NEO planning and execution.
 	
    a. Determines under which circumstances the SFODB will be required to conduct NEO.
 	
    b. Coordinates with the RSO in the U.S. Embassy for the location and numbers of American citizens.
 	
    c. Determines various COAs to remove the American citizens from the AO.
 	
    d. Selects the best COA.
 	
    e. Selects primary and alternate assembly areas (AA) for the evacuees.
 	
    f. Selects primary and alternate pickup zones (PZs)/LZs.
 	
    g. Selects primary and alternate routes from AAs to the PZs/LZs.
 	
    h. Develops communications plan between the AAs and the PZs/LZs, and en route.
 	
    i. Determines transportation requirements.
 	
    j. Plans for any media interest during NEO.
 	
    k. Balances security with information dissemination.
 	
    l. Plans to employ force-protection measures throughout NEO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
m. Obtains NEO plan approval from chief of mission or RSO.		
n. Publishes the OPORD.		
o. Develops methods to notify American citizens before NEO.		
p. Requests permission to employ the HN forces during the evacuation, if supporting a FID mission. With that agreement, the SFODB should alter the FID training plan and begin training the HN forces in NEO and crowd control procedures. Even with that agreement, however, the SFODB should continue to plan to execute NEO unilaterally—with little or no help from HN forces.		
12. The SFODB conducts NEO through the AOB.		
a. Receives notification from the U.S. Embassy to conduct NEO.		
b. Assembles the U.S. citizens at the AA.		
c. Establishes inner and outer security at the AA and the PZ or LZ.		
d. Inspects the vehicles and baggage of U.S. citizens for hazardous materials away from AA but out of plain view. Parks vehicles away from the AA.		
e. Processes U.S. citizens at the AA.		
f. Determines if any U.S. citizens have special needs (pregnancy, blindness, disabled, infants, sensitive equipment or documents).		
g. Briefs U.S. citizens on NEO procedures and baggage restrictions.		
h. Provides for CSS (food, rations, medical) for U.S. citizens.		
i. Employs deception measures during movement of U.S. citizens.		
j. Conducts route reconnaissance and emplaces security at potential danger areas.		
k. Monitors the local populace to determine if dislocated civilians may interfere with the evacuation.		
l. Moves the U.S. citizens to the LZ/PZ.		
m. Makes final coordination with inbound aircraft.		
n. Escorts the U.S. citizens onto the waiting aircraft, completing the evacuation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	051-202-1363	Camouflage Your Defensive Position

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
	071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Position
	071-326-5704	Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
	071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post
	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
STP 31-18-SM-TG	071-334-4002	Set Up a Helicopter Landing Site
	331-201-0007	Select a Drop Zone
	331-201-0011	Mark a Landing Zone for Fixed-Wing Aircraft
STP 31-18C34-SM-TG	051-195-4055	Supervise the Construction of Emplacements and Shelters
	331-922-0403	Plan for and Design a Training Base
STP 31-18D34-SM-TG	081-833-4498	Establish a Malaria Prevention and Control Program
	081-833-4500	Establish a Rabies Control Program
STP 31-18E34-SM-TG	113-573-5002	Manage Implementation of Electronic Counter-Countermeasures Procedures
	113-573-6001	Implement Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
	331-916-0016	Coordinate Signal Activities with Other Units
	331-916-0522	Log Radio Traffic
STP 31-18F34-SM-TG	301-349-2802	Determine Overlay Requirements Using the Terrain Factor Analysis Matrix
	301-349-2806	Develop a Situation Template
	301-349-2807	Identify Decision Points Along Each Avenue of Approach
	301-349-2808	Develop an Event Template Based on a Situation Template
	301-349-4210	List Indicators for Priority Intelligence Requirements/Information Requirements for a Specific Operation
	301-349-4220	Prepare a Collection Work Sheet and a Collection Plan
	301-349-4320	Maintain Order of Battle Workbook and Files
	301-349-4330	Prepare the Intelligence Estimate

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: ESTABLISH A SOCCE (31-2-0105) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND THE SOCCE HANDBOOK)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**		**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: This task is conducted in a variety of locations at home station and in theater. Upon receipt of a mission tasking order (a mission statement and the commander's intent from the group or battalion commander, along with the supported GPFC's mission and intent), the command relationship is delineated. The SOCCE commander conducts a thorough mission analysis and requests additional augmentation to support the mission requirements. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SOCCE advises the GPFC on the capabilities and limitations of SOF and recommends COAs regarding the employment of SOF. The SFODB commander establishes the SOCCE for 24-hour operations and establishes the required communications links between the GPF, deployed or isolated detachments, and the SFOB or FOB. The SOCCE keeps the FOB and GPF commanders informed of the status and activities under SOCCE control. The SOCCE maintains appropriate force protection for deployed assets.

TRAINING NOTE: The SOCCE is the focal point for integration and synchronization between the GPF and the SOF on the AirLand battlefield. The FOB needs to treat the SFODB assigned the SOCCE mission as it would treat an SFODA preparing for one of its missions. The same staff support, estimate process, mission analysis, and aid in making military decisions need to be integrated between the FOB and the SFODB. The SOCCE is responsible for learning the decision and planning cycles of the GPF, their respective field and tactical SOPs, and their deployment and employment plans. The SOCCE needs to be well versed not only in conventional tactics (Corps and below) but also needs to understand the peculiarities of the unit it will support. The SOCCE needs to sell itself by using the vernacular and methodologies of the supported units. The SOCCE should train liaison officers (LNOs) or attach their own LNOs to isolated SFODAs to gain insight into the team's missions, plans, and operating procedures. The SOCCE makes sure the SOF elements are familiar with the Special Operations Debriefing and Reporting System (SODARS) formats. Additionally, the SOCCE must have access and knowledge of how the SFODAs in isolation can help support and be supported (communications plan, FS plan, linkup plan, E&R plan) by the GPF. This liaison activity must take place to make sure the SOF plan supports the GPFC plans and ongoing operations. Deconfliction/synchronization must take place as early in the planning process as possible.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO-GO**
1. The SFODB(-) performs initial coordination with the supported unit.		
a. Contacts special operations coordination element (SOCOORD) representatives upon arrival (if available).		
b. Briefs the GPFC on the planned execution of the AO survey and the required preparations for the main body.		
c. Briefs the GPFC staff on the capabilities and limitations of the SOCCE and SOF for the particular mission.		
d. Identifies various staff points of contact (FS element, G2, G3).		
e. Establishes operational procedures with the G3/G2 staffs.		
f. Determines support limitations.		
g. Identifies key meetings and briefings to attend (targeting).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Determines time and location of commander's information briefing and coordinates SOCCE participation.		
i. Coordinates for a workspace in the main command post (CP).		
j. Coordinates to obtain maps, charts, and imagery to support operations.		
k. Establishes SOF/GPF combined IPB planning.		
l. Develops an intelligence collection matrix based on the GPF's PIR/IR.		
m. Coordinates security procedures to protect personnel, documents, and equipment with the HQ commandant.		
n. Deconflicts missions and areas of operation between SOF and the GPF.		
o. Obtains additional guidance from the supported unit, such as ROE, general NEO procedures, and communications plan.		
p. Confirms or establishes procedures for CS, CSS, and FS with higher in-country commander if applicable.		
q. Coordinates for joint use of G3 maps.		
r. Coordinates FS for deployed SOF.		
s. Coordinates MEDEVAC and hospital support plans for deployed SOF.		
t. Coordinates for food service and billeting.		
u. Coordinates parking, maintenance, and refuel areas for aircraft and vehicles.		
v. Briefs the communications plan to the GPF signal officer.		
w. Confirms or establishes communications procedures between the SOCCE/ supporting unit and the SFODAs, including (as a minimum) primary, alternate, contingency, and emergency procedures for C^2, all available CS, FS, and MEDEVAC.		
x. Identifies message release authority within the supported unit.		
y. Establishes communications with the FOB/SFOB.		
z. Coordinates with the FOB to ensure the deconfliction of SOF missions with those of GPFs.		
2. The SFODB prepares the SOCCE for operations.		
a. Receives the main body.		
b. Briefs the main body.		
c. Reads the GPF SOP.		
d. Establishes the priorities of work.		
e. Tests procedures for the primary, alternate, contingency, and emergency communications procedures for C^2, all available CS, FS, and MEDEVAC with the supporting unit or section.		
f. Establishes internal communications.		
(1) Plans for emergency destruction of cryptographic materials and messages.		
(2) Safeguards all COMSEC equipment and material.		
(3) Maintains redundancy with communications system.		
g. Establishes defined workstations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

h. Task organizes into appropriate shifts to provide 24-hour operations. Provides an element to accompany the tactical operations center (TOC) displacement when required.
 i. Establishes secure radio communications to provide C^2 of subordinate elements.
 j. Establishes required journals and logs.
 k. Establishes procedures IAW AR 380-5 and unit SOPs for control and destruction of classified documents and materials.
 l. Makes sure all maps, O&I boards, and overlays are posted and are current.
 m. Provides input for initial personnel status and logistics status to GPF and FOB/SFOB.
 	
 3. The SFODB enforces OPSEC.
  a. Ensures the working area/building is secured with a single point of entry.
  b. Develops an access roster of GPF personnel.
  c. Maintains sensitive/classified waste containers. Burns or shreds sensitive waste daily.
  d. Coordinates with the GPF military intelligence assets to conduct the CI inspection as needed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: OPERATE AS A SOCCE (31-2-0106) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND THE SOCCE HANDBOOK)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P		U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SOCCE is collocated with the supported GPF and has established a 24-hour operating base IAW the GPF staff. Isolated SFODs are conducting mission planning in support of the GPFC. SOCCE LNOs remain with the FOB and isolated detachments as required. A SOCCE liaison team will deploy with the TOC as required. Communications links between the FOB, GPF, and deployed SOF have been established. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SOCCE synchronizes SO with the GPF operational and intelligence requirements, making sure SO support the intent of the maneuver commander. The SOCCE integrates mission execution time to the tactical fight and coordinates supporting fires for SOF. The SOCCE monitors current operations and is the conduit for deconfliction between SOF and tactical forces in regard to terrain, airspace management, frequency management, targeting priorities, and FS coordination measures. The SOCCE maintains the required communications links between the GPF, FOB, and deployed SOF. The SOCCE directly controls deployed SOF OPCON or tactical control to the GPFC by issuing necessary FRAGOs and coordinating required CS. The SOCCE makes sure intelligence data and FS coordination measures are exchanged between the GPF and deployed SOF.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB establishes a CP within the supported GPF.
 	
 TRAINING NOTE: The SOCCE staff should be integrated into the GPF staff structure to aid timely information and intelligence flow.
 	
   a. Requests additional guidance (from the GPFC) as required.
 	
 TRAINING NOTE: As a minimum, this guidance includes confirmation on the ROE, the general scheme of maneuver, and the limitations on the SOCCE commander for changing planned mission execution without obtaining prior approval from the SOF higher commander.
 	
   b. Provides liaison support to the main CP, rear CP, and jump TOCs of the supported GPF and assigned or attached subordinates as the situation dictates.
   c. Maintains a communications link with all deployed or isolated SOF tasked with supporting the GPF.
 	
 2. The SFODB synchronizes and deconflicts SOF and GPF operations.
   a. Coordinates infiltration and exfiltration of SOF elements.
   b. Monitors SOF movement and actions in its JSOA.
   c. Monitors the personnel status of deployed SOF and submits required reports.
   d. Monitors the enemy situation, processes intelligence spot reports from the SOF, and submits reports laterally and to higher and lower HQ, as needed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Analyzes spot reports from SOF and higher HQ in relation to current IPB products and disseminates intelligence to deployed SOF elements and GPF G2. f. Issues FRAGOs to SOF elements under SOCCE C^2 based on battlefield situational changes, with prior approval from SFOB/FOB commanders. g. Gives the GPF commander a daily information briefing covering the full range of SOF operations. h. Reviews future plans and makes sure SO target nominations to the SOCOORD support the GPFC scheme of maneuver. (The SOCCE plans future operations in the absence of a SOCOORD.) 3. The SOCCE prepares for redeployment to the home station. a. Determines when the SOCCE can cease operations. b. Returns equipment to appropriate agencies. c. Destroys appropriate classified documents and materials IAW AR 380-5 and the unit SOP. d. Clears all temporary hand receipts.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: FACILITATE LINKUP BETWEEN OPERATIONAL DETACHMENTS AND GENERAL PURPOSE FORCES (31-2-0107) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND THE SOCCE HANDBOOK)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SOCCE has been established in support of the a GPF with the SOF operating in the GPFC's area of interest or area of influence. To effect the commander's intent, linkup between SOF and elements from the GPF is directed. The SOCCE commander conducts a thorough analysis of the mission and assists in the planning, coordination, and conduct of the operation. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB facilitates a safe and effective linkup between SOF elements and the GPF. The SFODB ensures that a detachment debriefing is conducted following linkup, and the detachments are redeployed as directed following the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO-GO**

1. The SFODB coordinates SOF element linkup with GPF (O1-9143.50-3005).
 	
 TRAINING NOTE: Coordination and planning of linkup operations between SOF elements and the GPF ideally occur during the SOF elements isolation phase with SOCCE deconfliction and synchronization.
 	
     a. Considers the following factors to ensure linkup coordination with conventional unit.
       (1) Designation and types of units to link up.
       (2) Linkup location.
       (3) Mission of elements and concept of the operation.
       (4) Direct and indirect FS plans and control measures.
       (5) Enemy situation.
       (6) Friendly locations (day and night).
       (7) Contact and coordination points.
       (8) Observation posts (OPs) and patrol routes.
       (9) Obstacle locations and types.
      (10) CS and CSS locations for emergency support.
      (11) Routes.
      (12) Far and near, day and night recognition signals.
      (13) SOI information.
     b. Analyzes the GPFC linkup operational concept.
       (1) Makes sure routes and lanes provide cover and concealment.
       (2) Makes sure recognition signals and markings were designated.
       (3) Makes sure direct and indirect fire plans were coordinated.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Makes sure common maneuver control measures and graphics were designated.		
(5) Makes sure linkup point was designated.		
c. Monitors linkup operations.		
TRANING NOTE: Situation permitting, provides a SOCCE LNO to accompany the GPF linkup forces. Ensures the immediate evacuation of the SOF element to be debriefed by the GPF G2/SOCCE.		
(1) Monitors radio transmissions.		
(2) Updates SFOB/FOB and GPFCs on linkup status.		
2. The SFODB and GPF debrief the SOF element.		
a. Coordinate with the GPF G2 to prepare SOF element debriefing.		
(1) Consolidate questions pertaining to assigned mission, including PIR and IR.		
(2) Make sure the debrief follows GPF unit SOP and includes items in standardization agreement (STANAG) 2003 Patrol Report.		
b. Use the appropriate SODARS format.		
(1) Start initial SODARS debrief input.		
(2) Prepare debrief report in the approved format and submit to higher (SOF) by secure means.		
3. The SFODB in conjunction with the GPF redeploys the SOF element.		
a. Coordinates with the GPF for transportation assets		
b. Coordinates with the SFOB/FOB for SOF element reception.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18II-MQS	O1-9143.50-3005	Plan a Linkup Operation with General Purpose Forces

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: REDEPLOY TO A SPECIFIED LOCATION (31-2-0108) (<u>FM 55-12</u>, FM 31-20, FM 101-5, TM 38-250, AND FORSCOM REG 55-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has received an order to redeploy from its higher command. The HN forces may need to continue their COIN operations and the SFODB may be handing off an HN assistance mission to another SFODB. The SFODB has all organic and assigned or attached personnel and equipment. All U.S. supplies and equipment that must be retained by the SFODB have been identified and necessary shipping container components are on hand. Air and ground transportation and material handling assets are available IAW the SFOD's redeployment OPORD. The SFODB C^3I, CS, and CSS relationships are firmly established for redeployment. They are, however, subject to change IAW METT-TC. The level of the insurgent or terrorist threat is equal to or greater than that specified in the OPORD of higher command and intelligence products available to the SFODB. The level of the threat may vary during the phases of redeployment. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB develops an OPORD or FRAGO for redeployment that reflects execution IAW the existing METT-TC and the higher OPORD or FRAGO. The SFODB terminates its redeployment at the specified location with all personnel, equipment, and supplies accounted for without violating OPSEC and IAW the SFODB OPORD.

TRAINING NOTE: Depending on the specific training scenario, all subtasks and standards may not apply. The trainer must evaluate this task making allowances as necessary. If plausible (IAW the scenario), a terrorist or insurgent incident involving the SFODB should be inserted into the movement phase of the SFODB's redeployment. See Task Number 31-2-0135, React to a Terrorist or an Insurgent Incident.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB develops plans for redeployment IAW their functional areas of responsibility. a. Prepares estimates of tentative COAs based on available support and material. b. Prioritizes estimates according to their desirability. c. Prepares plans for COAs selected by the SFODB commander. d. Coordinates with available supporting agencies and units for the support necessary to execute the redeployment. e. Disseminates the redeployment plans to all concerned higher, lower, and adjacent U.S. and HN units and agencies IAW their need-to-know. *TRAINING NOTE: If plausible (IAW the scenario), an "incident" involving the SFOD and the HN unit in dispute over the removal of U.S. supplies and equipment may be inserted into this task. The purpose of this incident, however, must be to achieve a specific and obtainable training objective.* 2. The SFODB prepares to pass responsibility for continued COIN operations to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Conducts inventories (jointly, if possible) of all supplies and equipment to be given to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB to make sure accountability remains positive and the chain of custody for this property remains unbroken.		
b. Verifies the accuracy of minefield records, range cards, target lists, and FS and operations overlays and passes custody of them to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB.		
c. Prepares a terminal evaluation report specifying the SFODB's estimate of the HN unit's capabilities and providing an opinion of its best future employment.		
d. Submits a copy of the HN unit's terminal evaluation to the HN unit's next higher commander.		
e. Passes custody of copies of training, HN operational records, and the HN unit's terminal evaluation to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB IAW OPSEC.		
f. Presents debriefings, AARs, and the terminal HN unit's evaluation to the higher in-country U.S. commander or his replacement, as required.		
g. Submits recommendations for awards or other special recognition for HN personnel, as appropriate, to the approving U.S. or HN unit or agency.		
3. The SFODB passes responsibility for continued COIN operations to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB.		
a. Obtains receipts for all supplies and equipment given to the HN unit or the relieving SFODB.		
b. Presents awards or other special recognition, as approved, to HN personnel during appropriate ceremonies IAW the cooperation of the HN unit commander, OPSEC, and requirements to continue operations.		
c. Continues, as nearly as possible, with normal advisory assistance operations until departing the JSOA or mission responsibility is passed to the relieving SFODB.		
d. Encourages counterparts to continue with normal COIN operations.		
e. Assists the relieving SFODB with its newly assumed advisory assistance operations as much as possible and until departing the JSOA.		
*4. The SFODB commander supervises the preparations for redeployment.		
a. Designates selected COAs for planning.		
b. Approves prepared redeployment plans or, as necessary, directs changes to the redeployment plans.		
c. Disseminates CONPLANs for actions on enemy contact to the relieving SFODB commander soon after his arrival in the JSOA.		
d. Assumes OPCON of the relieving SFODB, if direct fire enemy contact is gained during the relief and before the relieving SFODB commander has assumed mission responsibility.		
e. Places his SFODB under OPCON of the relieving SFODB, if direct fire enemy contact is gained during the relief and after the relieving SFODB commander has assumed mission responsibility.		
f. Passes responsibility of the advisory assistance mission to the relieving SFODB commander when he indicates he is ready to assume it and IAW the relief order.		
g. Orders the execution of the SFODBs redeployment OPORD or FRAGO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The SFODB outloads from its base of operations.		
a. Prepares all accompanying supplies and equipment for shipment IAW the regulations, FMs, and TMs applicable to the method of shipment and the type of material to be shipped.		
b. Prepares DD Form 1750 for each container express, insert, or pallet.		
c. Obtains certification of hazardous materials and the certifying official's signature on DD Form 1387-2, Special Handling Data, IAW TM 38-250, as necessary.		
d. Prepares manifests using the MAC or DD Form applicable to the type of aircraft to be used IAW FORSCOM Reg 55-1.		
e. Briefs ground support personnel (truck drivers, bus drivers, forklift operators) on equipment handling procedures, routes, convoy procedures, and the actions to be taken in the event of a terrorist or insurgent incident.		
f. Loads personnel and equipment onto trucks for movement to the departure airfield IAW the load plan in the SFODB OPORD.		
g. Executes OPSEC and physical security measures specified in the SFODB OPORD.		
6. The SFODB moves from the base of operations to the departure airfield or point of embarkation.		
a. Follows convoy routes specified in the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Conducts convoy procedures IAW the unit SOP and the SFODB OPORD.		
c. Makes sure its personnel remain oriented and alert during the movement by disseminating checkpoints and designating observation duties.		
d. Reports its arrival at the departure airfield IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
7. The SFODB loads the aircraft at the departure airfield.		
a. Presents copies of manifests and, as applicable, DD Form 1387-2 to the aircraft loadmaster or his designated representative.		
b. Makes sure its personnel and equipment are loaded into the aircraft IAW the load plan in the SFODB OPORD.		
c. Assists Air Force personnel in handling SFODB equipment, as requested.		
d. Obtains a preflight briefing from the aircraft commander or his designated representative.		
8. The SFODB flies from the departure airfield to the arrival airfield.		
a. Makes sure its personnel remain oriented during flight by disseminating in-flight checkpoints IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Takes actions in event of an unscheduled flight interruption (weather delay, emergency landing, aircraft malfunction delay) IAW the SFODB OPORD or preflight briefing.		
9. The SFODB transloads from the redeployment aircraft to ground transportation at the arrival airfield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Reports its arrival IAW the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Ensures its personnel security IAW the detachment SOP and OPORD.		
c. Maintains accountability for its supplies and equipment.		
d. Assists Air Force personnel in handling SFODB equipment, as requested.		
e. Briefs ground support personnel (truck drivers, bus drivers, forklift operators) on equipment handling procedures and routes and convoy procedures.		
f. Clears arrival location customs, as required.		
g. Loads personnel and equipment onto truck for movement to the specified redeployment location IAW the load plan in the SFODB OPORD.		
10. The SFODB moves from the arrival airfield to the specified redeployment location.		
a. Moves personnel and equipment to the specified redeployment location IAW the routes and procedures in the SFODB OPORD.		
b. Executes OPSEC and physical security measures specified in the SFODB OPORD.		
c. Reports its arrival at the specified redeployment location IAW the unit SOP and the SFODB OPORD.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: ESTABLISH AN ISOLATION FACILITY (31-2-0109) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND FM 101-5)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SF group or battalion is preparing to execute a previously received mission. The group or battalion is preparing to deploy and establish an SFOB or an FOB within an HN or a U.S. installation to support SO. If available, military police will control access and provide perimeter security. The battalion's tactical SOP, pertinent maps, overlays, and documents are available. An SFODB commander has been identified to assume responsibilities as the ISOFAC director in support of the SFOB or FOB. The SFODB has been augmented with a mission operations cell (MOC). Some iterations of this task may be accomplished in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ISOFAC is equipped and manned for 24-hour operations. The ISOFAC is properly secured with physical barriers, and access controls. Separate briefing, planning, billeting, and storage areas are prepared for each SFOD in isolation. Communications are established with the OPCEN, SIGCEN, and SPTCEN. Food service, shower, latrine, recreation, and exercise facilities are available for isolated SFODs.

TRAINING NOTE: Upon designation as the ISOFAC director, the SFODB commander will participate in the group or battalion's decision-making process. The SFODB will conduct mission planning, predeployment activities, and deployment IAW the higher commander's planning guidance, unit SOP, and OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB(-) performs advance party tasks.
   a. Begins to establish the ISOFAC.
   b. Identifies work areas, sleeping areas, and other designated areas.
   c. Obtains logistical support—such as bunks, desks, tables, chairs, copiers, map boards, and linens—from SPTCEN personnel.
   d. Coordinates with the SPTCEN director to provide and install barrier materials and theater of operations facilities as required.
   e. Establishes single-entry point.
   f. Conducts route reconnaissance to and from the main body and the SFOD's arrival or departure airfields.
   g. Conducts reconnaissance of training areas and ranges.
   h. Draws any vehicles for ISOFAC use.
   i. Plans to receive the rest of the SFODB.
 	
 *2. The ISOFAC director (SFODB commander) organizes ISOFAC personnel for 24-hour operations.
   a. Organizes into command, support, and operations cells.
   b. Establishes a priority of work.
   c. Establishes required physical security measures.
   d. Coordinates with OPCEN director for current operations procedures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Ensures SITMAP is posted in the OPCEN. f. Ensures logs and message-handling procedures are established and rehearsed. g. Submits ISOFAC defense plan to SPTCEN director for inclusion into the base defense plan. h. Coordinates with OPCEN S2 for emergency destruction plan. ** Indicates a leader task step.*		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: OPERATE AN ISOLATION FACILITY (31-2-0110) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SF group or battalion has deployed and established an operational base and is prepared to execute a previously assigned mission. The ISOFAC is established and manned for 24-hour operations and is ready to receive trained and equipped SFODs tasked to conduct SO missions. Some iterations of this task may be accomplished in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The ISOFAC director and staff participate in mission analysis to develop mission-specific orders. They isolate operational detachments assigned to execute SO missions and give the detachments an isolation schedule. They coordinate for mission briefings, CS, CSS, and other support as requested. They supervise message traffic between the isolated detachments and base centers to ensure timely action on all requested support. They provide feedback to the commander to facilitate the mission approval process. The ISOFAC director and staff monitor current operations and coordinate infiltration, resupply, exfiltration, and other requirements of deployed operational detachments.

TRAINING NOTE: By successfully operating an ISOFAC, the SFODB directly contributes to the ability of all isolated SFODs to accomplish the missions successfully. With that in mind, the SFODB should approach every task in this mission with the intent to assist the isolated detachments in every conceivable manner. The SFODB should anticipate requirements by effective and continuous planning and should strive for perfection as it attempts to satisfy every need of the isolated SFODAs. The SFODB should be proactive and fully support the isolated SFODAs.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The ISOFAC director and staff participate in mission analysis to develop mission-specific orders.
 	
   a. The ISOFAC director and staff gather facts and assumptions.
     (1) The command cell supervises current operations with the OPCEN.
     (2) The command cell ensures staff integration between the staff sections and their ISOFAC counterparts.
     (3) The operations cell determines availability of ranges, training areas, pilots, and aircraft.
     (4) The operations cell monitors the current situation and uses the MOC to update isolation packets in preparation of mission receipt.
     (5) The support cell determines the availability of Classes I through X supplies.
   b. The ISOFAC director briefs facts and assumptions and provides input to mission analysis.
   c. ISOFAC director provides input to COA development.
 	
 *2. The ISOFAC director isolates operational detachments.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Plans to receive the SFODs to be isolated.		
b. Picks up the SFODs and their equipment from the arrival airfield or quartering facility with the SPTCEN.		
c. Escorts them immediately into the assigned area.		
d. Provides the isolation packet to the SFOD before the mission brief.		
e. Coordinates for the following briefings to the SFOD:		
(1) Staff mission brief.		
(2) Mission concept briefing to the commander.		
(3) Communications brief.		
(4) Medical brief.		
(5) Pilot briefings, if required.		
(6) MACO briefing and prejump, if required.		
f. Provides the operational detachments with isolation and operational *hard times.* Coordinates with the detachments to construct detailed isolation schedules, including—		
(1) Briefing times.		
(2) Rehearsal windows.		
(3) Equipment and supply issue in support of training, resupply, and operations.		
(4) Packing of resupply bundles.		
(5) Operational times (infiltration, pickup, load, time on target).		
(6) Inspections.		
(7) Physical training and rest.		
(8) Communications systems checks.		
(9) Mission dress rehearsals.		
(10) Meals and personal hygiene.		
(11) Other events as requested or coordinated.		
3. The ISOFAC director coordinates for operational and CSS of isolated SFODs.		
a. Maintains a training schedule for each isolated SFOD.		
b. Coordinates for ranges, facilities, and training areas for SFOD mission preparation.		
c. Receives and then issues required Class V items to the SFOD for rehearsals, range firing, and the mission IAW requests.		
d. Submits an inventory list of deploying sensitive items from each SFOD to the SPTCEN.		
e. Submits food service requirements to the SPTCEN.		
f. Stays informed of critical events, changes, or problem areas affecting the isolated SFODs.		
g. Provides daily forecasts to the isolated SFODs of the weather in the local area and the OA.		
4. The ISOFAC director coordinates with the training cell to support committed SFODs in isolation.		
a. Coordinates for ranges and training areas.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Constructs training sites simulating targets.		
c. Provides training aids.		
d. Provides appropriate explosives, pyrotechnics, and ammunition for test shots and rehearsals.		
5. The ISOFAC director controls the message traffic of the isolated SFODs.		
a. Briefs the SFOD on message flow and release authority.		
b. Provides quality control for all SFOD message traffic.		
c. Screens all SFOD message traffic for completeness, OPSEC, and proper priority.		
d. Makes sure SFOD messages are routed to the proper center (OPCEN, SIGCEN, SPTCEN).		
e. Maintains a complete and accurate message log of all incoming and outgoing traffic.		
f. Monitors all SFOD message traffic between the MOC/OPCEN current operations section to ensure all messages receive a response within designated times.		
6. The ISOFAC director enforces OPSEC.		
a. Maintains compartmentation when necessary as determined during mission analysis.		
b. Makes sure the SFOD isolation area and building are secured with single-point entry.		
c. Gives the SFOD an approved access roster.		
d. Avoids contact between the isolated SFODs and other SFOD/FOB personnel not on the approved access roster.		
e. Maintains sensitive and classified waste containers used by the isolated SFODs and makes sure sensitive waste is burned or shredded daily (121-004-1518, 121-004-3518).		
f. Coordinates with the S2 to conduct CI inspection before the SFOD enters the isolation building and after the SFOD departs.		
g. Makes sure SFODs turn over all nonaccompanying sensitive or classified material to the S2 before the SFOD infiltrates.		
h. Coordinates with the S2 to sterilize the area and conduct a sensitive items inspection after the SFOD departs.		
*7. The ISOFAC director provides feedback to update the FOB commander and to facilitate mission approval.		
a. The command cell provides an overview of ISOFAC operations and committed detachments.		
b. The operations cell briefs current operations and detachment status and recommends mission change IAW the staff.		
c. The support cell provides an overview of the logistics status of detachments and required actions.		
8. The ISOFAC director and staff participate in the daily activities of the FOB.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Attend daily briefings. b. Conduct motor stables of assigned vehicles. c. Plan for future operations, including infiltrations, exfiltrations, reconstitution, and redeployment. d. Implement appropriate security and force-protection measures. e. Transmit and receive messages to and from deployed SFODs using Standard Audio Visual Service Supplement formats. f. Brief FOB commander daily on deployed SFODs. 9. The ISOFAC director makes sure isolated SFODs produce a briefing book in the prescribed format for the FOB commander's review not later than (NLT) 3 hours before the scheduled briefback. Emphasis should be on information. The book may contain the following information: a. A profile of SFODA skills. b. Battle tasks and METL. c. Mission-essential equipment (MEE). d. Mission-essential supplies. e. Mission-essential knowledge. f. Restated mission. g. Specified tasks. h. Implied tasks. i. Success criteria. j. Failure criteria. k. E&R criteria. l. Abort criteria. m. Contingencies. *TRAINING NOTE: SFODAs cannot fail to distinguish key differences between briefbacks and other types of rehearsals. A commander's overemphasis of the briefback often leads to the sacrifice of hands-on rehearsals. Rehearsals are most beneficial when combined in an effort to develop a well-rehearsed and synchronized detachment while simultaneously convincing the commander that the detachment is prepared to execute the mission. Depending on the type of mission, certain steps may take greater importance. For example, DA missions require more emphasis on hands-on rehearsals, while SR missions focus on the IPB during the briefback.* 10. The ISOFAC director and staff make sure the isolated SFODs are prepared to conduct the final full-dress rehearsal for the commander's review. a. Coordinate with the SPTCEN for OPFOR. b. Coordinate with the SPTCEN for logistical requirements, such as target construction, training ranges, transportation, and ammunition or pyrotechnics. c. Coordinate with the OPCEN for aviation and other operational requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provide guidance as necessary. (*NOTE: The ISOFAC director portrays the commander during preliminary rehearsals.*)		

11. The ISOFAC director makes sure the isolated SFODs prepare their briefback IAW the prescribed format. (The SFOD briefback format and mission briefing will be given to the director and staff on Day 1 of isolation.)
 	
   a. Observes SFOD rehearsals for key aspects of the mission.
   b. Provides guidance as necessary.
   c. Portrays the FOB commander during briefback rehearsals.
   d. Assists the isolated SFOD in preparing the area for the briefback.		

12. After the SFODs infiltrate, the ISOFAC director and staff monitor the progress of the SFODs through message traffic.
 	
   a. Log all incoming and outgoing messages.
   b. Brief the FOB during daily staff briefings on the progress of the mission.
   c. Deliver outgoing messages to the SIGCEN.
   d. Study incoming messages to understand the tactical situation on the ground.
   e. Anticipate the requirements of the deployed SFODs.
   f. Deliver resupply bundles to the departure airfield or port as required.
   g. Prepare to assist in emergency or routine exfiltration of deployed SFODs.
   h. Coordinate to debrief redeployed SFODs.
   i. Reconstitute and reisolate SFODs as required.		

13. The ISOFAC director and staff plan for future operations.
 	
   a. The command and operations cell makes sure adequate time and resources are planned into detachment recovery.
   b. The operations cell continually monitors detachment evasion criteria and recommends appropriate action.
   c. The operations cell updates training ranges, rehearsals, and other requirements as operations evolve.
   d. The operations cell recommends detachment mission tasking.
   e. The support cell coordinates Classes I through X supplies to support detachment recovery.		

14. The ISOFAC director and staff prepare for redeployment to the home station.
 	
   a. Determine when the ISOFAC can cease operations.
   b. Return equipment to appropriate agencies.
   c. Clear all temporary hand receipts.
   d. Destroy classified documents and materials as appropriate.		

* Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	**Task Number**	**Task Title**
STP 31-18-SM-TG	121-004-1518	Process Classified Material

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PREPARE THE ISOLATION AREA (31-2-0111) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been alerted and moved into the ISOFAC with all personal and mission equipment. A mission support NCO is assigned to the detachment. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB provides for separate work and sleep areas and makes sure OPSEC measures are maintained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB organizes its area within the ISOFAC.		
a. Arranges the designated area into separate sleeping and work sections.		
b. Arranges the designated area to restrict access into the detachment's isolation area. Additionally, provides a convenient location for a designated SFODB member to verify all personnel who enter the area and to log all incoming and outgoing messages and requests for information.		
*2. The S2 enforces strict OPSEC measures (121-004-1518, 121-004-3513).		
a. Makes sure the SITMAP is posted and a cover sheet is used for security purposes.		
b. Makes sure classified and nonclassified trash areas are designated.		
c. Makes sure the access roster is posted and procedures are established for accountability and storage of classified documents maintained in the isolation area.		
d. Ensures controlled access into the detachment's area.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	121-004-1518	Process Classified Material
	301-348-6001	Protect Classified Information

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PREPARE FOR THE MISSION (31-2-0112) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been alerted for a UW mission. The detachment is isolated at an operational base. Essential operational material and logistics support are available and provided to the detachment. The SFODB has received the mission briefing and all available information for mission preparation from the SFOB/FOB staff. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Detachment members study the available materials and accomplish assigned areas of responsibility. OPORDs are developed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander assigns duties and areas of responsibility to detachment members.
 	
   a. Designates detachment members to accomplish specific isolation responsibilities.
   b. Designates detachment members to accomplish staff and operational functions.
 	
 2. SFODB members study the available materials.
 	
   a. Study background, intelligence, operational materials, and area assessment.
   b. Request additional briefings and information from the mission support NCO and SFOB or FOB staff to clarify questions or to fill information gaps, including E&R nets in existence.
 	
*3. The SFODB commander makes sure operational plans are prepared.
 	
   a. Makes sure detachment members capitalize on PIR and IR.
   b. Makes sure staff functions (as appropriate) are accomplished and OAs of responsibility are met.
   c. Makes sure all operational documents are prepared.
   d. Makes sure training needs of the SFODB are assessed and arrangements are made for training in subjects (or equipment) as required.
   e. Makes sure coordination is made for training and rehearsal areas.
   f. Makes sure the OPORD is complete and IAW FM 101-5, Appendix H, including, as a minimum, the following:
     (1) Basic five-paragraph order.
     (2) Intelligence annex.
     (3) Infiltration plan.
     (4) CE annex.
     (5) Administrative and logistics plan (or service support annex).
     (6) Escape and recovery plan (to include en route E&R plan).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(7) Exfiltration plan.
 	
  g. Prepares the commander's portion of the briefback.
 	
4. A designated detachment member completes S1 staff responsibilities.
 	
  a. Makes sure each team member is prepared for overseas deployment IAW the unit SOP.
 	
  b. Coordinates for legal briefings.
 	
5. A designated detachment member completes S2 staff responsibilities (O4-9106.01-0012, O4-9106.01-0047, O4-9143.04-0021).
 	
  a. Prepares a preinfiltration estimate of the situation based on latest intelligence and advises on security matters (301-349-2201, 301-349-2802, 301-349-2806, 301-349-2807, 301-349-2808, 301-349-2811, 301-349-4210, 301-349-4220, 301-349-4330, 301-349-4350, 301-349-4410).
 	
  b. Prepares a terrain and weather analysis (301-349-2812, 301-349-4340).
 	
  c. Develops security plans.
 	
  d. Updates enemy OB based on current threat (301-349-4320, 301-349-2810).
 	
6. A designated detachment member completes S3 staff responsibilities.
 	
  a. Prepares a preinfiltration operations estimate. Develops COAs and advises the commander on operational matters (O4-9143.01-0002, O4-9143.01-0013, O4-9143.02-0026, O4-9143.02-0027, O4-9143.02-0028, O4-9143.02-0029, O4-9143.04-0024).
 	
  b. Prepares indigenous force POI based on the estimate of the situation (O4-9143.02-0011, O4-9150.09-0108, O4-9150.09-0109).
 	
  c. Supervises detachment members in the preparation of lesson plans for and rehearsals of the initial period of instruction and in the preparation of training aids.
 	
  d. Makes sure the E&R plan is developed.
 	
7. A designated detachment member completes S4 staff responsibilities (O4-9143.02-0013).
 	
  a. Coordinates logistical requirements with detachment members and the mission support NCO.
 	
  b. Submits necessary requests to the mission support NCO.
 	
  c. Prepares packing lists for accompanying equipment and supplies and for resupply missions.
 	
  d. Supervises packing, rigging, and crating of equipment for designated means of delivery (101-512-1403, 101-512-1404).
 	
  e. Prepares the S4 portion of the briefback.
 	
8. A designated detachment member completes S5 staff responsibilities.
 	
  a. Identifies key leaders of political, religious, and economic groups who may impact on mission success or failure.
 	
  b. Identifies sources, size, and power of discontent and recommends ways to take advantage of the situation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Identifies the motivation of target area resistance groups.		
d. Identifies significant do's and don'ts for the detachment in JSOA to ensure maximum cooperation with the target population.		
e. Identifies key functions or structures that if destroyed or damaged may cause significant problems for the leadership and may impact on the civilian population.		
f. Assists in developing the detachment infiltration deception plan.		
9. A designated detachment member completes CE responsibilities.		
a. Coordinates with the SFOB or FOB signal officer on communications procedures, SOI, emergency contact, and open net, including SOI verification.		
b. Coordinates with the SFOB or FOB and establishes time frame for monitoring.		
c. Conducts final performance test and inspection of all communications equipment; reports results to operations sergeant and SFODB commander.		
d. Prepares the communications portion of the briefback.		
e. Makes sure required reports and formats are contained in the SOI.		
f. Prepares communications equipment for infiltration and equipment to be delivered in automatic resupply.		
g. Advises the commander on communications matters.		
h. Requests communications equipment.		
i. Manages assignment of code words for the detachment.		
j. Conducts communications training, as required, for detachment members.		
k. Provides input and recommendations to the S2 for ECM.		
10. The medical sergeant develops operational plans.		
a. Assists the commander in a final check of medical records and arranges for final medical examinations and immunizations.		
b. Requests and draws medicine, medical supplies, and equipment needed, based on OPORD.		
c. Makes a tentative plan for physical examinations, sick call, and treatment of guerrilla personnel.		
d. Prepares and packs medical equipment and supplies for the mission.		
11. The S3 prepares infiltration CONPLANs.		
a. Prepares and coordinates CONPLANs for assisted or unassisted nets (as appropriate).		
b. Prepares and coordinates abort, emergency, assembly, and contact plans for an airborne infiltration (O4-9143.01-0016), including—		
(1) Procedures over friendly territory.		
(2) Procedures over hostile territory.		
(3) Procedures for an emergency water landing.		
(4) Procedures for a compromise on the LZ and DZ.		
(5) Procedures for a compromise at the launch site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(6) Actions at the primary and alternate assembly points.
   c. Prepares CONPLANs for waterborne infiltration, including—
     (1) Extended distance at drop-off point.
     (2) Procedures for compromise during drop-off, movement, or beach landing.
     (3) Procedures for disabled watercraft.
     (4) Procedures for unfavorable current, tide, or surface conditions.
     (5) Procedures for deviation from course.
     (6) Procedures if craft capsizes.
     (7) Establishment of primary and alternate assembly points.
   d. Prepares CONPLANs for land infiltration, including—
     (1) Actions in case of enemy contact at the line of departure.
     (2) Actions in case of enemy contact after crossing the line of departure.
     (3) Actions or procedures for casualties sustained after enemy contact.
     (4) Tentative action if observed by the enemy in hostile territory.
     (5) Plans for passage of friendly forces lines (FFL) with adjacent unit fire and support.
 	
 Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	101-512-1403	Prepare an A-7A Cargo Sling for Low- or High-Velocity Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment
	101-512-1404	Prepare an A-21 Cargo Bag for Low- or High-Velocity Airdrop of Supplies and Equipment
	331-201-0007	Select a Drop Zone
	331-201-0010	Select a Landing Zone for Fixed-Wing Aircraft
	331-201-0015	Prepare an Infiltration Plan
	331-201-0016	Prepare an In-Flight Abort Plan
	331-201-0017	Prepare an Assembly Plan

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
	331-201-0018	Prepare a Contact Plan
	331-201-0022	Plan JSOA Logistic Support Requirements
	331-201-0024	Plan Guerrilla Force Training
	331-201-0025	Write a Program of Instruction
	331-201-0026	Write a Training Schedule/Plan
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9106.01-0012	Describe the Mission Planning Process
	O4-9106.01-0047	Identify the Procedures for Analyzing a Mission
	O4-9143.04-0021	Accomplish Premission Activities
	301-349-2201	List Information Gaps (Priority Intelligence Requirements/Information Requirements) for a Specific Operation
	301-349-2802	Determine Overlay Requirements Using the Terrain Factor Analysis Matrix
	301-349-2806	Develop a Situation Template
	301-349-2807	Identify Decision Points Along Each Avenue of Approach
	301-349-2808	Develop an Event Template Based on a Situation Template
	301-349-2810	Identify Target Areas of Interest
	301-349-2811	Develop an Event Analysis Matrix for Each Mobility Corridor
	301-349-2812	Determine Weather Overlay Requirements
	301-349-4210	List Indicators for Priority Intelligence Requirements/Information Requirements for a Specific Operation
	301-349-4220	Prepare a Collection Work Sheet and a Collection Plan
	301-349-4320	Maintain Order of Battle Workbook and Files
	301-349-4330	Prepare the Intelligence Estimate
	301-349-4340	Prepare the Intelligence Annex (to an Operation Order)
	301-349-4350	Develop Doctrinal Templates for Threat Evaluation
	301-349-4410	Select Entry Zones

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: DEBRIEF AN ASSET (31-2-0113) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is in isolation and preparing for UW operations. An asset from the JSOA has been made available to the SFODB. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB reviews the background packet and extracts and accurately records all necessary information for the development of the debriefing plan. Personnel select the most appropriate objectives, approaches, recording methods, and interpretation method. Personnel question the asset using correct questioning and follow-up techniques. Debriefing is conducted to ensure maximum exploitation of the asset.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO-GO**

1. The SFODB prepares for the debriefing.
 	
   a. Requests the staff S2 to provide background information packet on the asset, including the reliability rating.
 	
   b. Makes sure the debriefing area is secluded from the isolation work area and is free of operational materials.
 	
   c. Develops a debriefing plan.
 	
     (1) Determines objectives.
     (2) Selects primary and alternate approach strategies.
     (3) Determines if an interpreter is required.
     (4) Prepares the debriefing plan.
     (5) Selects method of recording information.
 	
 2. The SFODB conducts the debriefing.
 	
   a. The SFODB commander provides the initial debriefing parameter.
 	
     (1) Introduces personnel.
     (2) States the purpose of the debriefing.
     (3) Outlines the briefing sequence.
 	
   b. SFODB personnel conduct an asset debriefing.
 	
     (1) Use prepared questions to avoid repetition and to make sure the functional area is covered.
     (2) Use follow-up questions to gain additional information about a specific topic or to exploit leads provided by the asset.
     (3) Use control and repeated questions to check truthfulness and accuracy of the information obtained.
     (4) Use leading questions only to verify information or to pinpoint specific information.
     (5) Avoid disclosing sensitive operational information.
     (6) Tape conversation for later reference, if possible.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(7) Exploit leads fully.
  c. The detachment commander terminates the debriefing when—
    (1) The objectives are satisfied.
    (2) The asset or detachment is physically or mentally unable to continue.
    (3) The asset possesses more information than can be exploited in one session.
    (4) The detachment loses control.
 	
 3. SFODB consolidates information gathered during the debriefing.
  a. Compares information with detachment's PIR.
  b. Develops new PIR based on information gathered during the debriefing.
  c. Submits requests for information to the OPCEN.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PREPARE THE SFODB E&R PLAN (31-2-0114) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has received all available information for mission preparation. Information is available from national agencies. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB prepares a five-paragraph OPLAN and accompanying overlay and coordinates support of the plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB prepares an E&R plan using a five-paragraph OPORD format.
 	
   a. In paragraph one—
      (1) Identifies the enemy forces stated in the intelligence annex to the OPORD, as well as population control measures and border security forces.
      (2) Identifies the friendly forces, including actions for the SFOB or FOB to assist the SFODB's evasion.
      (3) Identifies friendly elements (other than contact elements) or personnel to assist the SFODB during evasion.
      (4) Identifies air support actions (if any) during evasion.
      (5) Describes the climate, environment, terrain, water, and food sources in the JSOA and along the evasion route.
      (6) Identifies natural and man-made obstacles.
      (7) Specifies the assumptions that would require the SFODB to evade.
   b. In paragraph two, states a clear and concise statement of the mission plan.
   c. In paragraph three—
      (1) Includes FS (if available), primary and alternate evasion routes, and CONPLANs.
      (2) Identifies the evasion detachments.
      (3) Includes CONPLANs and procedures for the disclosure of information to the enemy upon capture.
      (4) Identifies the contact element (group or person) that will provide assistance during evasion (or at the contact and recovery points) and any coordinating instructions (as necessary).
      (5) Includes linkup procedures (if any), recovery or safe area identification, and the SFODB's procedures if contact cannot be established.
   d. In paragraph four, includes survival aids, survival kit packing lists, emergency resupply items list, and the location of pre-positioned caches (if used) (O4-9103.02-0007, O4-9103.02-0008, O4-9103.02-0009, O4-9103.02-0037).
   e. In paragraph five—
      (1) Includes the location and use of the SOI.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Includes evasion alert procedures and the SFODB's signals for notifications acknowledgment, confirmation to evade, and signals to cancel or alter plans.
 	
(3) Identifies the evasion assembly points.
 	
(4) Identifies the SFOB or FOB notification that the SFODB's evasion plan is in effect.
 	
(5) Identifies the signals for linkup and the signals, actions, and procedures for recovery and safe areas.
 	
(6) Specifies the SFODB's (evasion team) chain of command.
 	
2. The SFODB prepares an overlay for the SFODB E&R plan.
 	
   a. Depicts the evasion sectors.
 	
   b. Depicts the primary and alternate assembly points for evasion.
 	
   c. Depicts the primary and alternate contact points.
 	
   d. Depicts the contingency evasion corridor.
 	
   e. Depicts the tentative hide and holdup areas.
 	
   f. Depicts (primary and alternate) emergency LZs or DZs.
 	
   g. States actions for movement at border areas and danger areas.
 	
3. The designated detachment member coordinates support of the E&R plan.
 	
   a. Coordinates with the designated SFOB or FOB representative for details on joint service support of the E&R plan.
 	
   b. Modifies the plan based on joint service restrictions, constraints, established contact plan procedures, or availability.
 	
   c. Requests information and confirmation from government agencies.
 	
   d. Uses compartmented measures for all E&R coordination.
 	
4. The SFODB conducts rehearsals.
 	
   a. Coordinates with the mission support noncommissioned officer for rehearsal areas.
 	
   b. Rehearses OPLANs and CONPLANs (as required).
 	
   c. Rehearses communications techniques (as required).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	331-919-0122	Select Essential Items for a Survival Kit
	331-919-0123	Identify Environmental Factors Unique to Deserts and Their Impact on Survival/Evasion
	331-919-0124	Identify Environmental Factors Unique to Jungles and Their Impact on Survival/Evasion
	331-919-0125	Identify Environmental Factors Unique to Cold Weather Regions and Their Impact on Survival/Evasion

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PRESENT A BRIEFBACK (31-2-0115) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: SFODB members have prepared briefbacks in their areas of responsibility to be presented to the SFOB/FOB commander and staff. The SFODB commander has conducted rehearsals to make sure all areas have been covered and all members understand the overall mission as well as individual and section responsibilities. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB conducts the briefback IAW the unit SOP. The briefback area is arranged to facilitate the briefback, and the detachment is declared deployable by the base commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB makes sure the briefing area is prepared for the briefback.
    a. Makes sure the briefback area is neat and clean and the seating arrangements for the SFOB or FOB commander and staff are situated to facilitate clear observation of maps and briefback aids or guides.
    b. Makes sure SFODB members' seating arrangements are orderly and members are positioned for briefing and inspection by the SFOB or FOB commander and staff.
    c. Makes sure the commander's folder and target folder are placed on the desk in front of the SFOB or FOB commander and staff.
 	
 2. The SFODB conducts the briefback.
    a. Prepares the briefback based on the Group SOP.
    b. Demonstrates a clear understanding of the mission and the means of accomplishment, including all related plans and individual actions.
    c. Uses visual aids as necessary to facilitate briefback.
    d. Handles and controls the E&R plan IAW the Group SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: STERILIZE THE ISOLATION AREA (31-2-0116) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has conducted the briefback. The isolation phase has been completed before infiltration into the JSOA. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB sterilizes the isolation area and detachment members of all operational material. Equipment and supplies not to be used on the mission are turned in to the SPTCEN.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB conducts sterilization of the isolation area. a. Destroys classified trash by accepted method of disposal (121-004-3513). b. Clears mission-related working documents and papers from the isolation area (121-004-1518). c. Sterilizes individuals of notes and sensitive nonessential materials, including pocket litter. Sterilizes uniforms IAW the Group SOP. 2. The SFODB conducts final mission preparation. a. Prepares equipment and personnel for infiltration. b. Inventories and turns in all nonmission-related equipment and supplies to the SPTCEN.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	121-004-1518	Process Classified Material
	301-348-6001	Protect Classified Information

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INFILTRATE THE OPERATIONAL AREA BY LAND (31-2-0117) (<u>FM 7-8</u>, FM 21-26, FM 21-75, AND FM 30-5)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The JSOA is in hostile territory. Deploying detachment members have been transported from a permanent base, an SFOB, or an FOB to a launch base near the border of friendly territory or within or near the JSOA. The area is sparsely populated; however, enemy vehicular and foot patrols are conducted in the area. Population control measures are in effect. Ground surveillance radar and sensor devices are being used, and the enemy has air parity. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB infiltrates the objective area without compromising the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander directs movement from the launch base.
    a. Makes sure all changes to the OPLAN are disseminated to detachment members.
    b. Makes sure the selected infiltration route provides concealment from enemy observation.
    c. Adjusts the infiltration route as necessary based on the METT-TC.
    d. Employs appropriate movement techniques based on the METT-TC.
    e. Designates en route rallying points.
 	
 2. The SFODB maintains security.
    a. Employs active and passive countertracking measures.
    b. Makes sure the rate of movement does not violate security.
    c. Conducts actions at danger areas IAW the unit SOP.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: Tasks 3 and 4 apply only if the SFODB conducts a border crossing to reach the JSOA.
 	
 3. The SFODB conducts surveillance of the crossing site or border.
    a. Establishes a security position before reaching the crossing point or border IAW the METT-TC.
    b. Reconnoiters the proposed crossing site or border.
    c. Selects routes.
    d. Designates an initial rallying point and a far side rendezvous point.
 	
 4. The SFODB conducts the crossing.
    a. Directs the movement or crossing IAW the OPORD and the unit SOP.
    b. Conducts assembly on far side (as applicable).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

5. The SFODB reacts to a chance enemy contact.
 	
   a. Avoids chance contacts if possible.
   b. Breaks contact IAW the unit SOP and the METT-TC.
   c. Reorganizes after contact and continues the mission IAW the METT-TC.
 	
* Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INFILTRATE BY AIR OPERATIONS (31-2-0118) (TC 31-24, FM 31-19, FM 31-20, AND FM 57-220)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: An air operation will be conducted at night from an aircraft making a single pass on a predetermined track and altitude. At a specified time, the drop is executed over the release point (or airlands on the designated LZ). The weather conditions in the JSOA are favorable for air operations. The enemy has air parity and ground-air defense capability. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TRAINING NOTE: Infiltration should be planned as a blind drop unless a trained DZ reception party is available to assist in the air operation.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB successfully conducts air operations IAW the infiltration plan without compromising the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB moves from the isolation area to the marshaling area.
    a. Maintains OPSEC.
    b. Meets station time.		

*2. The SFODB commander supervises the preparation of an air operation.
    a. Makes sure detachment members receive a final briefing and inspection.
    b. Confirms the flight route and checkpoints.
    c. Makes sure designated jumpmaster coordinates drop procedures and in-flight emergency procedures with aircrews.
    d. Makes sure detachment members remain alert and oriented to in-flight checkpoints during flight.
    e. Briefs en route E&R plan.		

TRAINING NOTE: The following tasks are mission unique. Evaluate the SFODB on these tasks as they relate to the mission plan.		

3. The SFODB infiltrates by parachute.
    a. Jumps on command.
    b. Conducts air operations according to the plan prepared in isolation.		

OR		

4. The SFODB infiltrates using air-landing techniques.
    a. Boards aircraft using the load plan developed in isolation.
    b. Monitors the flight route to make sure accurate ground location is known during flight.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Exits the aircraft quickly and safely upon landing. * Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INFILTRATE BY WATERBORNE OPERATIONS (31-2-0119) (<u>TC 31-25</u>, AR 611-75, FM 20-11-1, AND FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Landing sites have been hydrographically surveyed. Currents, tides, and weather are compatible for infiltration. Infiltration is to be conducted during hours of low visibility. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB successfully infiltrates the JSOA without compromising the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. A designated detachment member familiarizes other SFODB members with the characteristics of the type of craft to be used.		
2. The SFODB commander makes sure all detachment members are apprised of on-board troop locations.		

3. The SFODB prepares for debarkation.
   a. Verifies the dimensions of storage areas (hatches). Makes sure SFODB equipment meets the dimension limitation.
   b. Confirms loading, unloading, and exiting requirements.
   c. Prepares and packages equipment so that dimensions and weights are compatible with the assigned craft.
   d. Waterproofs equipment and makes buoyant (as required).
   e. Rehearses for the type of debarkation.
   f. Assigns members to a debarkation station.
   g. Rehearses actions at the landing site and conducts landing site security according to the OPORD.
   h. Debarks the craft using preselected and rehearsed methods.		

4. The SFODB conducts waterborne operations.
   a. Accomplishes movement to the landing site in an orderly and safe manner IAW the OPORD.
   b. Maintains strict light and noise disciplines.		

5. The SFODB infiltrates by surface or subsurface craft. A designated detachment member—
   a. Makes sure the SFODB follows the current regulation for launching from a submarine by wet-deck or dry-deck.
   b. Accounts for all personnel after launching and before movement to the landing site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Makes sure the boat team follows the correct procedure in manning an inflatable boat for lashing equipment (when applicable). d. Makes sure the boat team moves toward the landing site in predesignated formations (when applicable).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: ESTABLISH CONTACT (31-2-0120) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: Intelligence sources have indicated that resistance elements will be in the contact area and will respond to recognition signals. The detachment is given the location of the contact area and contact procedures. En route checkpoints have been established. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB uses proper movement techniques, establishes an objective rally point (RP), conducts surveillance, and maintains security. The detachment establishes contact with the resistance element IAW operational plans. This task may not apply to all methods of establishing contact.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB moves to the contact area.
  a. Moves to the vicinity of the contact area.
  b. Uses proper movement techniques.
    (1) Maintains security.
    (2) Employs countertracking techniques.
    (3) Crosses danger areas properly.		

2. The SFODB establishes objective rally point (ORP).
  a. Halts and reconnoiters for ORP.
  b. Occupies ORP.
  c. Maintains all-around security.		

3. The SFODB prepares for contact with resistance force.
  a. Conducts reconnaissance of contact site.
  b. Establishes surveillance.
  c. Rehearses contact procedures.		

4. The designated contact element establishes contact.
  a. Moves to primary or alternate contact site.
    (1) Checks with surveillance.
    (2) Provides overwatch and extraction for the contact team.
  b. Moves to the contact point (primary or alternate, as applicable).
    (1) Confirms far recognition.
    (2) Confirms near recognition signal.
    (3) Confirms safe signal.
    (4) Exchanges bona fides.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

TRAINING NOTE: If no contact is made at either the primary or alternate contact points, the detachment implements the CONPLANs.
 	
    c. Brings remaining detachment forward after contact is confirmed.
 	
 5. The SFODB prepares to move to the base or safe area.
    a. SFODB commander and resistance element coordinate plans for movement.
    b. Members use proper movement techniques.
 	
 6. The SFODB completes infiltration.
    a. Moves to base or safe area with the resistance element.
      (1) Conducts tactical march security.
      (2) Informs detachment of route and location.
    b. Updates area assessment. The SFODB commander—
      (1) Ensures the location and orientation of the detachment.
      (2) Evaluates the detachment's physical condition.
      (3) Analyzes the overall security of the immediate area.
      (4) Analyzes the status of the local resistance elements.
    c. Establishes radio contact with the SFOB.
      (1) Follows SOI procedures.
      (2) Reports an area assessment update.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: ESTABLISH AN AREA COMMAND GROUP AND STAFF (31-2-0121) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: Following infiltration, the detachment has established contact with the resistance element and is currently located in the base camp or safe area. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB and resistance element establish a command structure that includes representatives from the guerrillas, underground, auxiliary, and SFODB. The area command is established along military lines.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB continues area assessment.
  a. Assesses leadership.
  b. Assesses logistical capabilities.
  c. Assesses administrative procedures.
  d. Assesses strength of resistance elements within the OA (O4-9143.02-0011).
  e. Assesses intelligence-collection capabilities.
  f. Assesses the resistance forces' expectations of U.S. involvement.
 	
2. The SFODB develops rapport with resistance leaders.
  a. Establishes working relationship with resistance leaders to include—
    (1) Clarifying any agreements or promises.
    (2) Confirming or refuting customs and taboos.
  b. Reassures resistance leaders that U.S. goals support the overall resistance movement.
 	
3. The SFODB establishes a command structure (O4-9143.02-0010).
  a. Command group includes leaders from—
    (1) Guerrillas.
    (2) Auxiliary.
    (3) Underground.
    (4) SFODB.
  b. Forms command structures along military lines to include staff elements.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: Once an E&R net is established, the E&R net organizer becomes part of the command structure.
 	
4. The SFODB establishes C^2.
  a. Assists the area commander in establishing a chain of command.
    (1) Overall command is with the area commander.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

(2) Resistance leaders are assigned sectors.
 	
 (3) Subordinate leaders are given mission-type orders and coordinating instructions on activities in their sectors.
 	
 (4) Meetings are scheduled to coordinate their efforts and for the area commander to provide guidance and direction for future efforts.
 	
   b. Evaluates the coordination between resistance forces.
 	
   c. Offers assistance in the development or operation of existing E&R net.
 	
 TRAINING NOTE: After organizing the Area Command Group and Staff, the SFODB continues to develop the area complex. It organizes the sector forces under the area command, receives follow-on SFODBs, and continues C^2 through the spectrum of combat operations, linking up with GPF and demobilizing.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	331-201-0024	Plan Guerrilla Force Training
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9143.02-0010	Organize an Area Command

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: DEVELOP THE AREA COMPLEX (31-2-0122) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The area command has been established and is operational. Resistance is widely dispersed throughout the area and is conducting COIN operations. The enemy is in full control of the area, possesses radio direction-finding equipment, and has implemented population control measures to deter resistance activities. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB assists the area command in establishing secure small-unit operational bases IAW METT-TC, secure communications network linking the area command, guerrillas, auxiliary, and underground, and a logistical system that will support operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. SFODB personnel assist the area command in establishing operational bases and facilities (O4-9106.01-0036, O4-9143.02-0030).		
a. Ensure bases and facilities provide essential support to the guerrilla forces, including—		
(1) Shelter.		
(2) Concealed ingress and egress routes.		
(3) Medical facilities.		
(4) Communications facilities.		
(5) Training facilities.		
(6) Security.		
b. Recommend improvements to the area complex based on the detachment's assessment (O4-9143.02-0030).		
2. SFODB personnel assist the area command in establishing a communications network.		
a. Establish a communications network.		
(1) Links the area command, guerrilla forces, auxiliary, and underground forces.		
(2) Links operational base commanders with their subordinates.		
(3) Links inner and outer security forces protecting operational bases.		
b. Make sure nets are compartmentalized.		
c. Maintain maximum security by using nonelectronic means of communication, mission type orders, and other clandestine methods.		
3. SFODB personnel assist the area command in establishing a logistics support system.		
a. Assess internal and external sources of supply.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

b. Develop systems for receipt, transportation, storage, and accountability of supplies.
 	
c. Establish procedures for procurement of supplies.
 	
d. Cache supplies throughout the JSOA.
 	
4. SFODB personnel assist the area command in establishing an intelligence network.
 	
   a. Ensure nets are highly compartmentalized to protect personnel and operations.
 	
   b. Ensure clandestine communications techniques are used in transmitting information and receiving direction within the OA.
 	
   c. Ensure the nets work toward obtaining PIR/IR.
 	
   d. Ensure nets support early warning and detection systems and CI operations.
 	
5. SFODB personnel assist the area command in coordinating the operations of all elements of the resistance force.
 	
   a. Monitor current operations.
 	
   b. Provide C^3I to employed elements.
 	
   c. Sustain operations IAW the OPORD, auxiliary's capabilities, and external SOF support.
 	
   d. Monitor the current situation and plans for future operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	331-201-0019	Select a Base Camp
	331-915-4019	Organize the Auxiliary
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9143.02-0030	Organize an Area Complex

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PLAN INTERDICTION OPERATIONS (31-2-0123) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: An area command has been established and is operational. The indigenous forces have trained to a level of proficiency that allows them to conduct small-unit operations. Strict population control measures are in effect. Enemy patrolling activities have been intensified. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB and area command select targets based on the CARVER principle. Target priorities are consistent with guidance from the area commander and unit capabilities. Interdiction operations hinder or interrupt lines of communication, deny use of key areas, and destroy industrial facilities, military installations, equipment, and resources.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB plans interdiction operations IAW the area command.		
a. Identifies target systems for interdiction.		
(1) Identifies major target systems within the JSOA.		
(2) Identifies sources of raw materials.		
(3) Identifies methods by which materials are transported.		
(4) Identifies sources of power and methods of transmission.		
(5) Identifies factory complexes.		
(6) Identifies means by which the products are transported.		
b. Conducts target analysis using the CARVER principle.		
(1) Determines criticality.		
(2) Determines accessibility.		
(3) Determines recuperability.		
(4) Determines vulnerability.		
(5) Determines effect.		
(6) Determines recognizability.		
c. Selects targets and target complexes based on the results of target analysis and the status of the guerrilla forces (training, equipment, morale).		
d. Determines appropriate method of interdiction.		
e. Identifies and selects appropriate control measures to regulate interdiction operations.		
f. Issues WARNORDs.		
2. The SFODB prepares for interdiction operations IAW the area command.		
a. Coordinates reconnaissance of the target to determine PIR/IR.		
b. Revises interdiction plan as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

c. Coordinates underground and auxiliary support.
   d. Develops and issues operations orders.
 	
3. The SFODB coordinates interdiction operations IAW the area command.
   a. Coordinates interdiction to deny the enemy the use of the targeted system through complete or partial destruction.
   b. Schedules operations to achieve maximum results.
   c. Ensures interdiction operations coincide with the area command and U.S. objectives.
 	
4. The SFODB coordinates poststrike assessment IAW the area command.
   a. Determines effect of interdiction on the target.
   b. Determines psychological impact on enemy and local population.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT LINKUP OPERATIONS (31-2-0124) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The JSOA is coming under the OPCON of advancing GPFs. The GPF mission requires the use of SF personnel and the local resistance force. This situation will require a linkup between the conventional and resistance forces. Air and artillery supporting fires are being used by the GPFs to support combat operations. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: SFODB completes linkup with the GPFs at the time and location specified in the higher OPORD with no friendly casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander briefs all personnel on the conduct of the linkup.
 	
   a. Disseminates frequencies, call signs, codes, and visual signals to be used during linkup.
   b. Briefs primary and alternate avenues of approach to the linkup and contact site.
   c. Designates checkpoints.
   d. Establishes tentative RPs along the route.
   e. Establishes actions to take on contact during linkup.
   f. Determines actions to take if an element becomes separated during linkup.
 	
 2. SFODB moves to the RP.
 	
   a. Establishes the RP within the maximum effective range of GPF weapon systems.
   b. Maintains communications and operational security.
 	
 3. SFODB occupies the RP overwatching the contact point.
 	
   a. Establishes the RP within small-arms range of the contact point.
   b. Establishes all-around security.
   c. Establishes observation and listening posts.
 	
 4. SFODB communications NCO establishes communications.
 	
   a. Ensures communications equipment is compatible between the detachment and GPF.
   b. Ensures radios and SOI are controlled by the SFODB personnel IAW the linkup plan.
 	
 5. SFODB contact team establishes initial contact with contact personnel from the GPF.
 	
   a. Moves to the contact point.
   b. Clears the immediate area.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Marks the linkup point using the previously coordinated recognition signal or safe signal as appropriate.		
d. Initiates the long-range recognition signal IAW the OPORD.		
e. Initiates near recognition signal as appropriate.		
f. Exchanges bona fides or challenge and password as appropriate.		
6. The SFODB completes linkup IAW the linkup plan (O4-9143.02-0017).		
a. Identifies all SOF and resistance force elements to the GPF.		
b. Assigns movement and security responsibilities.		
c. Accounts for all personnel and equipment.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9143.02-0017	Describe Linkup of Unconventional Warfare and General Purpose Forces

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: DEMOBILIZE THE GUERRILLA FORCE (31-2-0125) (FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The OA is under HN control. There is no longer a requirement for an armed resistance force. The guerrilla force is well armed and equipped and is widely dispersed throughout the area. The underground and auxiliary have cached weapons, radios, and explosives for which there are no records. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The guerrilla force is demobilized IAW the HN plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. SFODB personnel prepare for demobilization (O4-9143.02-0008).
  a. Prepare rosters of all guerrilla, auxiliary, and other known supporters.
  b. Compile information on political orientation of all leaders and their potential qualifications to include—
    (1) Administration.
    (2) Police and security qualifications.
    (3) Leadership ability.
  c. Inventory SFODB documents and records of the following supplies and equipment reflecting serial number, amount, and location as applicable.
    (1) Weapons.
    (2) Serial numbered and sensitive items.
    (3) Field equipment.
    (4) Rations.
  d. Consolidate documents and files, including—
    (1) Principal area assessment.
    (2) Supply records and inventory documents.
    (3) Personnel and pay documents.
    (4) Intelligence and security files.
    (5) E&R files.
    (6) Operations plans, orders, and annexes.
    (7) Communications records and crypto-material.
    (8) Medical records.
  e. Compile a list of known enemy sympathizers and collaborators.
 	
2. SFODB personnel coordinate demobilization plans with HN agencies.
  a. Provide rosters of guerrilla personnel.
  b. Furnish information on political and biographic data of leaders.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Consolidate inventories of arms, equipment, and U.S. serial numbered items held by the guerrilla force.		
d. Ensure HN provisions for care of sick and wounded, discharge procedures, rehabilitation, and employment of discharged guerrilla force.		
3. SFODB personnel coordinate efforts with CA personnel.		
a. Provide a roster of all guerrilla, auxiliary, and other sources of support.		
b. Provide lists of all personnel killed in action (KIA) or wounded in action.		
c. Furnish combat records for preparation of awards and decorations.		
4. SFODB personnel assemble and brief the guerrilla force on demobilization plans.		
a. Brief the need for demobilization.		
b. Brief demobilization requirements on the part of commanders and individuals.		
c. Brief the arms and equipment collection plan.		
d. Brief the care and processing of the sick and wounded.		
5. SFODB personnel assist in conducting the demobilization of the guerrilla force.		
a. Ensure all guerrilla force members are assembled and accounted for.		
b. Ensure that all administrative records are available.		
c. Collect all arms and equipment.		
d. Ensure proper care of the sick and wounded is provided as stated in the HN plan.		
e. Ensure discharge procedures are accomplished.		
f. Check on provisions for the rehabilitation and employment of discharged personnel.		
g. Verify training programs to reorient the discharged personnel.		
h. Verify payment of approved claims by the resistance commanders to local civilians and guerrilla force personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9143.02-0008	Describe the Demobilization of Resistance Forces

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT EXFILTRATION BY LAND (31-2-0126) (<u>FM 21-75</u>, FM 7-8, FM 21-26, AND FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has relocated and has established a patrol base in the vicinity of friendly forces or near the border of a friendly (or neutral) country. Enemy and friendly combat operations are being conducted in the area. Border control measures are actively enforced. The area is sparsely populated and is in a remote sector of the border. Enemy ground surveillance radar and sensor devices are being employed, and the enemy is conducting aerial overflights. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB successfully reenters the FFL or crosses the border without loss of mission capability.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The SFODB commander develops an OPLAN.		
a. Establishes work priorities.		
b. Analyzes the current situation and develops tentative COAs.		
c. Designates detachment members for the leader's reconnaissance of the FFL or border area.		
2. The SFODB conducts reconnaissance and surveillance activities of the FFL or border area.		
a. Uses proper movement techniques IAW the METT-TC (071-326-0501).		
b. Identifies danger areas and obstacles.		
c. Locates friendly forces' positions (as applicable).		
d. Maintains alertness for OPs, sensor and electrical devices, and roving border patrols when conducting reconnaissance of the border area.		
e. Maintains security at all times.		
f. Identifies en route, far, and near rallying points IAW the METT-TC.		
g. Identifies routes for crossing the border or reentering the FFL.		
h. Places surveillance on the primary routes for crossing the border or for reentering the FFL.		
*3. The SFODB commander formulates the plan or conducts troop leading procedures (071-326-3049).		
a. Disseminates information to all detachment members.		
b. Analyzes information and develops a plan of action.		
c. Issues a patrol order (as required).		
4. The SFODB conducts a border crossing.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Conducts movement per the OPORD and the unit SOP (071-326-5605, 071-326-5610).		
b. Assembles after crossing (if applicable).		
c. Maintains OPSEC.		
*5. The SFODB commander supervises a border crossing.		
a. Accounts for all detachment members and MEE.		
b. Disseminates information to all detachment members.		
c. Contacts higher HQ and forwards information based on the METT-TC.		
6. The SFODB conducts reentry to friendly lines.		
a. Establishes radio communications through the SFOB or the FOB with the friendly forces' commander or directly with friendly forces.		
b. Conducts movement, if communication is established, IAW the OPORD and the unit SOP.		
c. Conducts reentry per the OPORD.		
OR		
d. Reconnoiters for an appropriate reentry point or establishes contact with an OP, if communication is not established.		
7. The SFODB commander accounts for all detachment members and MEE upon reentry to friendly lines.		
*8. The SFODB commander disseminates information upon reentry to friendly lines.		
a. Informs the friendly unit commander of valuable tactical information.		
b. Ensures OPSEC is maintained.		
c. Contacts the FOB, the SFOB, or higher HQ for instructions or follow-on mission.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
	071-326-3049	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures for an Operation
	071-326-5605	Control Fire Team Movement
	071-326-5610	Implement Infantry Squad Movement Techniques When Not in Contact With the Enemy

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT EXFILTRATION BY AIR OPERATIONS (31-2-0127) (TC 31-24, FM 31-19, AND FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has received instructions from higher command to plan an air exfiltration from its JSOA. It has moved to the vicinity of the air operations area and established a patrol base. The SFODB must identify and select landing and recovery zones (RZs) and be prepared to exfiltrate on order. The area is sparsely populated and meets the general requirements for an air exfiltration operation. A state of air parity exists, and the enemy is conducting small-unit combat operations in the area. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The air operation is conducted IAW the OPLAN based on the current METT-TC.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB selects or confirms preselected primary and alternate LZs or RZs for exfiltration.		
a. Conducts reconnaissance and surveillance activities of the sites.		
b. Places surveillance on the selected sites.		
c. Selects the LZ or the RZ site IAW TC 31-24 and the METT-TC (O4-9143.01-0013).		
d. Selects zones that minimize safety hazards for personnel and aircraft.		
e. Selects new sites (as necessary).		
2. The SFODB reports primary and alternate LZs or RZs.		
a. Prepares reports IAW the SOI.		
b. Transmits appropriate reports IAW the SOI and COMSEC procedures (O4-9143.01-0006).		
3. The SFODB prepares to execute an air exfiltration.		
a. Moves to the LZ or the RZ IAW the OPORD and the unit SOP.		
b. Provides security for LZ or RZ operations.		
c. Marks the zone for operations IAW the SOI, the OPLAN, and the METT-TC.		
d. Displays zone markings IAW the SOI, the OPLAN, and the METT-TC (071-334-4002, O4-9143.01-0005).		
4. The SFODB executes air exfiltration.		
a. Boards aircraft based on the OPLAN and the METT-TC.		
b. Provides security for the operation.		
OR		
c. Uses extraction systems IAW the prescribed methods for the type of system being used.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. The SFODB commander ensures maximum safety of personnel and aircraft during the extraction.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	071-334-4002	Set Up a Helicopter Landing Site
	331-201-0009	Report a Drop Zone/Landing Zone and Submit a Mission Request
	331-201-0010	Select a Landing Zone for Fixed-Wing Aircraft
	331-201-0011	Mark a Landing Zone for Fixed-Wing Aircraft

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT EXFILTRATION BY WATERBORNE OPERATIONS (31-2-0128) (<u>TC 31-25</u>, AR 611-75, FM 20-11-1, AND FM 31-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has completed the OPORD requirements and has moved to and established a patrol base in the vicinity of the waterborne exfiltration site or area. The area is sparsely populated; however, enemy vehicular and foot patrols are conducted in the area. Ground surveillance radar and sensor devices are used. The enemy has air parity. Offshore naval patrols are present. The SFODB has the equipment to support small boat operations or to conduct surface swimming. Some iterations of this task may be conducted in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB conducts linkup with a recovery vessel or aircraft at a predesignated point and time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB prepares for exfiltration.
  a. Places surveillance on the cache or the resupply point.
  b. Recovers the submerged cache without loss of equipment or personnel.
 	
  OR
 	
  c. Recovers waterborne equipment from land caches or from resupply sources.
  d. Places into operation waterborne equipment for small boat or swimming operations. Dons appropriate equipment IAW operating instructions and the unit SOP.
  e. Tests equipment for serviceability.
  f. Sterilizes cache and exfiltration sites.
  g. Maintains security posture throughout the operation.
 	
2. The SFODB uses small boats to exfiltrate.
  a. The SFODB commander task-organizes the SFODB for small boat operations and movement.
  b. Waterproofs weapons and equipment (as applicable).
  c. Follows correct procedures for manning boats and securing equipment IAW operating instructions and the unit SOP.
 	
  OR
 	
3. The SFODB uses surface swimming techniques to exfiltrate.
  a. Task-organizes the SFODB for swimmer movement.
  b. Waterproofs weapons and equipment (as applicable).
  c. Makes sure buddy teams are assigned and linked up with a buddy line.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The SFODB moves from the departure site to the rendezvous point at sea by small boats or by swimming.
 	
   a. Conducts movement to the rendezvous point IAW the OPORD and maintains security.
   b. Follows safety procedures.
   c. Maintains predesignated boat and swimmer team formations during movement to the rendezvous point.
   d. Uses offset navigation techniques to compensate for tidal currents and for time-distance factors.
   e. Maintains light and noise disciplines throughout the operation.
 	
*5. The SFODB commander accounts for personnel.
 	
   a. Accounts for personnel at the debarkation point.
   b. Accounts for all personnel and equipment at the rendezvous point.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: The following standards are for boat and swimmer teams and apply based on equipment and recovery system.
 	
*6. The SFODB commander supervises the boarding of the recovery vessel or aircraft.
 	
   a. Makes sure SFODB operations are conducted IAW Navy regulations and operational procedures and FMs for recovery by submarine (wet-deck or dry-deck).
   b. Makes sure surface vessel boarding operations are conducted IAW current guidance (regulations, FMs, SOPs).
   c. Makes sure air recovery operations are conducted IAW current guidance (regulations, FMs, SOPs).
   d. Makes sure high-speed surface craft recovery operations are conducted IAW current guidance (regulations, FMs, SOPs).
 	
* Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INITIATE EVASION (31-2-0133) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND FM 7-8)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is in its JSOA. The SFODB's evasion OPLAN is complete, including the plans for the selected method of exfiltration. Necessary coordinations for support of the SFODB's evasion have been made IAW the evasion OPLAN. However, the support coordinated for may not be provided IAW changes in the METT-TC. The evasion OPLAN assumptions have become fact, or the SFODB commander has ordered the SFODB to evade. The level of threat is equal to or greater than that specified in the intelligence products available to the SFODB. The level of the threat may vary during the course of the evasion. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All detachment members are notified, and the SFODB is assembled and task-organized for evasion IAW the SFODB's evasion OPORD and METT-TC.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB disseminates the order to initiate evasion.		
a. Informs all detachment members using the signals and procedures specified in the evasion OPORD.		
b. Notifies the FOB or SFOB that evasion has been initiated IAW METT-TC.		
c. Prevents the compromise of the SFODB's intention to evade by using covert intradetachment notification procedures, as applicable.		
2. The SFODB or evasion teams assemble, if necessary.		
a. Rally or rendezvous IAW the evasion OPORD.		
b. Move from the rally or rendezvous point by the NLT time specified in the evasion OPORD for assembly.		
c. Employ a system of signal and surveillance procedures to recover stragglers before evading IAW the METT-TC and as applicable.		
3. The SFODB or evasion teams make final preparations to evade.		
a. Redistribute evasion-essential equipment and supplies to achieve an equitable crossload between SFODB members and evasion teams.		
b. Cache or destroy excess equipment and supplies, making sure SFODB members carry the minimum load by weight necessary for evasion IAW METT-TC.		
c. Sterilize the rally or rendezvous point by removing all signs that the point was occupied by U.S. personnel.		
*4. The SFODB commander finalizes the evasion OPORD.		
a. Modifies the evasion task organization, if necessary, to allow for missing personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Selects the evasion corridor (primary, alternate, or other) to be used. (SFODB commander only.) c. Issues FRAGO as necessary. d. Orders the SFODB to enter the evasion corridor or subcorridor and to evade. *Indicates a leader task step.*		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: EVADE (31-2-0134) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND FM 7-8)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has initiated evasion, and the commander has ordered the SFODB to enter its evasion corridor or subcorridor and to evade. The level of threat is equal to or greater than that specified in the intelligence products available to the SFODB. The level of the threat may vary during the course of the evasion. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB traverses the length of its evasion corridor without being captured or decisively engaged by the enemy and is prepared to exfiltrate IAW the SFODB's evasion OPORD.

NOTE TO EVALUATORS: Evaluate each subtask every time it is performed. For example, the subtask "The SFODB or team moves," will be performed repeatedly until the evasion corridor has been traversed. You should evaluate this subtask each time it is performed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB moves.
 	
    a. Restricts movement to periods of limited visibility, when possible.
 	
    b. Employs all-around security by assigning areas to SFODB members to observe leaving no gaps in between observation assignments.
 	
    c. Uses, as a minimum, an overwatch when crossing danger areas.
 	
    d. Designates en route rally and rendezvous points necessary to maintain control of the detachment or team.
 	
    e. Avoids enemy contact and contact with the indigenous population, when possible.
 	
    f. Breaks enemy contact, when made, by using fire and movement.
 	
    g. Rallies or meets after enemy contact, as necessary.
 	
    h. Employs noise, light, and camouflage disciplines during movement.
 	
    i. Performs reconnaissance and posts security around any area selected for foraging en route.
 	
 2. The SFODB occupies a clandestine patrol base.
 	
    a. Establishes a clandestine patrol base during any extended halt in movement.
 	
    b. Reconnoiters the location selected for the patrol base before occupation.
 	
    c. Employs, as a minimum, noise, light, and litter disciplines and stands to provide security to the patrol base.
 	
    d. Establishes, as a minimum, alert, fire, evacuation, and priorities of work plans for the patrol base, if not a part of unit SOP.
 	
    e. Does not occupy the patrol base longer than 24 hours unless forced to by METT-TC.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Sterilizes the patrol base before abandonment.		
3. The SFODB holes up, as necessary.		
a. Selects hole-up areas IAW METT-TC.		
b. Reconnoiters hide sites before occupying or reoccupying them.		
c. Employs, as a minimum, stand-to noise, light, and litter disciplines and provides security in the hide sites.		
d. Caches, temporarily, equipment or provisions that are not capable of being carried at all times.		
e. Reconnoiters cache sites before recovering the caches.		
f. Restricts movement within the hole-up area to reduce the occupation signature.		
g. Moves in the hole-up area during periods of limited visibility, when possible.		
h. Observes, while moving in the hole-up area, indications of enemy presence or compromise of the hole-up area.		
i. Abandons the hole-up area if indications exist that the enemy is maintaining a presence in the area or that the area has been compromised.		
j. Employs individual survival skills to forage for provisions within the hole-up area.		
k. Sterilizes all sites (hide sites, caches, cooking areas) used in the hole-up area after performing the required survival tasks at them.		
4. The SFODB conducts rendezvous en route or at the terminal evasion rendezvous point IAW the evasion OPORD.		
a. Overwatches the rendezvous point before employing required signals.		
b. Employs rendezvous signals IAW the evasion OPORD or SOP.		
c. Surveils SFODB members showing themselves in the rendezvous site before contacting them.		
d. Does not contact surveilled SFODB members if indicators exist that they have been compromised.		
e. Locates rendezvoused main body a safe distance, IAW METT-TC, away from the rendezvous point during the rendezvous process.		
5. The SFODB receives an emergency resupply.		
a. Reconnoiters the emergency resupply DZ or cache before attempting the recovery.		
b. Employs an overwatch during the recovery.		
c. Takes only the authorized portion of the resupply.		
d. Caches the remainder of the resupply IAW the evasion OPORD.		
e. Sterilizes the recovery site.		
f. Emplaces signals indicating resupply recovery and cache as required by the evasion OPORD.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	**Task Number**	**Task Title**
STP 31-18-SM-TG	331-919-0101	Employ Key Word SURVIVAL
	331-919-0161	Evade Dog/Visual Tracker Teams

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS IN AN NBC ENVIRONMENT (03-3-R201) (<u>FM 3-3</u>, FM 3-4, FM 3-5, FM 3-100, AND FM 100-20)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is alerted by the nuclear, biological, and chemical warning and reporting system (NBCWRS) or intelligence indicators that an NBC hazard will likely occur in its JSOA. The SFODB has individual and unit-organic NBC defensive equipment. Additional support may or may not be available. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB completes preparations before the hazard occurs to reduce vulnerability. The SFODB sustains only minimum damage and contamination to equipment. The SFODB sustains no more than the maximum number of NBC casualties that will still allow mission accomplishment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB institutes passive NBC defensive procedures (O4-9106.01-0018).		
a. Conducts rehearsals of selected NBC defensive procedures using briefbacks as a minimum.		
b. Enforces OPSEC, including noise, light, litter, camouflage, and COMSEC disciplines IAW the METT-TC.		
c. Disperses personnel, elements, or units to the maximum allowed by the METT-TC.		
d. Uses terrain masking to avoid the effects of a nuclear strike.		
e. Strengthens positions in the defense with overhead cover (051-195-3004, 051-195-4008).		
f. Protects electronic equipment against electromagnetic pulse and transient radiological effects on electronics, if anticipating a nuclear strike.		
g. Protects equipment from contamination by encapsulation (cover with tarps, package in bags, bury).		
h. Employs a comprehensive immunization program (081-833-4502).		
i. Enforces sound field sanitation, including food and water preparation and handling procedures.		
*2. The SFODB commander enforces individual protective measures.		
a. Conducts a MOPP analysis.		
b. Institutes MOPP IAW the analysis (031-503-3008).		
c. Adjusts the MOPP to changes in the situation.		
d. Establishes operational exposure guidance (OEG) if a nuclear hazard is expected.		
3. The SFODB develops a collective-protection system.		
a. Selects field-expedient shelters to provide the maximum possible protection against the expected NBC hazard.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Improves selected field-expedient shelters.		
c. Requests and sets up issue-type collective protection equipment (M51 shelter system or simplified collective protection equipment) if additional support is available.		
d. Makes sure shelter locations and shelter procedures are disseminated.		
4. The SFODB increases supply and equipment issue action consistent with the expected hazard and the support available.		
a. Stockpiles additional individual defensive equipment (MOPP gear, M258A1 decontamination kits, M8 detector paper, protective mask filter elements and repair parts).		
b. Stockpiles additional unit defensive equipment (M8A1 alarm refill parts, M9 detector paper, M256A1 detector refills, bulk decontamination materials).		
c. Makes sure the SFODB's NBC defensive equipment is operational and is calibrated and issued to trained operators.		
d. Identifies NBC defensive equipment shortages and takes action to obtain replacements.		
e. Identifies and procures field-expedient or locally procurable NBC defensive equipment and supplies.		
*5. The SFODB commander resumes the mission consistent with the OPORD and the METT-TC.		
a. Plans actions to avoid or to relocate from contaminated or potentially contaminated areas.		
b. Directs acknowledgment of the receipt of NBCWRS messages and takes appropriate action (predicts fallout or downwind hazard).		
c. Reports the status of SFODB preparations and readiness for the anticipated hazard.		
d. Directs periodic or continuous monitoring of the NBC situation IAW the expected hazard.		
e. Directs the deployment of early warning devices IAW the expected hazard.		
f. Designates detachment members to log pertinent data and to generate NBCWRS messages (as appropriate).		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-2020	Use and Perform Operator Maintenance on the IM93 or IM147 Dosimeter and PP1578-Series Charger
	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture
STP 31-18C34-SM-TG	051-195-3004	Construct Emplacements and Shelters
	051-195-4008	Determine Logistical Requirements for Fighting and Protective Positions
STP 31-18D34-SM-TG	081-833-4637	Supervise Immunization Programs
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	O4-9106.01-0018	Explain Mission Risk Assessment Methodology in a Chemical Environment

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: REACT TO A CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL ATTACK (03-3-R202) (<u>FM 3-4</u>, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, AND FM 3-100)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: An automatic alarm sounds, detector paper changes color, an automatic masking event occurs, or other indications of a chemical or biological attack are evident. The SFODB has individual and unit-organic NBC defensive equipment. The SFODB has sustained chemical or biological casualties in the initial attack. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB continues its mission consistent with the METT-TC, within 20 minutes of the attack and without sustaining additional chemical or biological casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO-GO**
1. The SFODB conducts immediate NBC basic skills actions (031-503-1002, 031-503-1007, 031-503-1015, and 031-503-1019).		
a. Masks within 9 seconds and pulls hoods on within an additional 6 seconds of exposure.		
b. Starts skin decontamination within 1 minute of exposure if contaminated.		
c. Assumes MOPP4 within 8 minutes of exposure.		
d. Starts personal wipe down of hoods, masks, gloves, and weapons within 15 minutes of exposure.		
e. Starts operators' wipe down of control and handling surfaces of contaminated MEE immediately following personal wipe down.		
*2. The SFODB commander reorganizes the SFODB.		
a. Reestablishes the chain of command and fills mission-essential positions in order of importance.		
b. Makes sure casualties are identified, treated, decontaminated, and prepared for movement out of the contaminated area.		
c. Makes sure KIA personnel are decontaminated, wrapped, marked, and prepared for movement. (KIA personnel may be cached.)		
d. Redistributes equipment.		
3. The SFODB resumes the mission consistent with the OPORD and the METT-TC.		
a. Continues to monitor the NBC situation.		
b. Submits NBCWRS messages as appropriate.		
c. Acknowledges receipt of NBCWRS messages and takes appropriate actions.		
d. Bypasses and avoids the contaminated area.		
e. Conducts a hasty or detailed decontamination.		
4. The SFODB conducts unmasking procedures consistent with the METT-TC (031-503-3002).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

a. Conducts unmasking procedures using a chemical agent detection kit within 20 minutes of the order.
 	
 OR
 	
 b. Conducts unmasking procedures without using a chemical agent detection kit within 40 minutes of the order.
 	
 5. The SFODB replenishes chemical defensive equipment and supplies.
    a. Determines the amount of chemical defensive supplies expended.
    b. Requests replacement supplies from external support sources.
    c. Procures replacement field-expedient or locally available chemical defensive supplies and equipment.
    d. Makes sure replacement supplies are distributed.
 	
 * Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1007	Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment Using an M258A1 Decontamination Kit
	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
	031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological Hazard/Attack
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures
	031-503-3005	Prepare and Submit NBC 1 Reports
	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: OPERATE IN AN NBC ENVIRONMENT (03-3-R313) (<u>FM 3-4</u>, FM 3-3, FM 3-5, AND FM 3-100)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has a mission that requires it to cross and operate or continue to operate in an NBC contaminated area. The SFODB has individual and unit-organic NBC defensive equipment. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB conducts its mission without sustaining NBC casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander plans additional environmental factors for operations in a contaminated area consistent with the OPORD and the METT-TC.
 	
    a. Uses all available NBC reports and intelligence to assess the contamination hazard.
    b. Determines the duration of the chemical agent hazard or establishes the OEG.
    c. Selects routes to minimize exposure to the hazard consistent with the agent type, the duration of the hazard, or the OEG.
    d. Develops a plan for monitoring the hazard, using modified chemical or radiological survey techniques (point, flank, rear chemical sentry, or radiological monitor).
    e. Separates nonmission-essential personnel and equipment by leaving them in a clean area or sending them out of the contaminated area. These personnel may be formed into a decontamination team to assist the main body on its exit from the contaminated area.
 	
 2. The SFODB prepares to operate in a contaminated area.
 	
    a. Assumes the correct level of MOPP for the chemical or biological hazard (031-503-1002, 031-503-1015, 031-503-3008).
 	
 OR
 	
    b. Protects exposed skin and uses dust masks (field-expedient or protective mask) for a radiological hazard.
 	
 OR
 	
    c. Employs the monitoring plan, detecting the contamination hazard as it is encountered.
    d. Protects equipment by encapsulation.
 	
 3. The SFODB conducts operations in a contaminated area consistent with the METT-TC (031-503-3004).
 	
    a. Continues to monitor activities.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Avoids stirring up dust.		
c. Avoids dust clouds by increasing intervals between personnel, elements, or units for a radiological hazard.		
d. Avoids low ground and other contamination contact danger areas (chemical, biological, or radiological hazard).		
e. Identifies "clean" areas that may be used for MOPP gear exchange or temporary relief from MOPP4.		
f. Remains aware of the quickest route and distance out of the contaminated area for emergencies.		
g. Conducts the mission and exits the area as quickly as possible without becoming an NBC casualty or violating the OEG.		
4. The SFODB exits the contaminated area.		
a. Checks for chemical or radiological contamination (031-503-1014, 031-503-1020).		
b. Identifies, treats, decontaminates, and prepares casualties for movement.		
c. Decontaminates to reduce the spread of contamination (as required).		
d. Computes, records, and reports total dose.		
e. Submits NBC reports IAW the OPORD.		
f. Continues the mission IAW the OPORD.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1007	Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment Using an M258A1 Decontamination Kit
	031-503-1014	Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper
	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
	031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents using M9 Detector Paper
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area
	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT CHEMICAL RECONNAISSANCE (03-2-R309) (FM 3-3 AND FM 3-19)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is conducting operations in an area where chemical warfare has been initiated. The commander needs to determine if chemical hazards are present in the specific area of operational concern. The SFODB commander has received a mission that identifies areas of priority. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB identifies, marks, and makes sure the higher HQ knows the location of all chemical agents in the assigned reconnaissance area. Locations should be marked and recorded within 100 meters accuracy of actual location.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander issues guidance to subordinate leaders.
   a. Ensures that all personnel receive the WARNORD.
   b. Ensures that all personnel understand the WARNORD.
 	
*2. The reconnaissance element leader begins preparations for the chemical reconnaissance.
   a. Performs map reconnaissance of the route and specific area for reconnaissance.
   b. Determines reconnaissance technique to use.
   c. Plans for decontamination following the reconnaissance operation (if decontamination is necessary).
   d. Coordinates for FS (indirect or attack helicopter, if available).
   e. Briefs personnel on proper reporting and recording procedures.
   f. Issues an OPORD or a FRAGO to subordinate leaders.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: The commander ensures that decontaminants are available for decontamination following the reconnaissance operation.
 	
  3. The commander makes sure additional MOPP gear is available for MOPP gear exchange if decontamination is required after reconnaissance operation.
 	
  4. The reconnaissance element prepares for a chemical reconnaissance mission.
   a. Prepares vehicles and equipment for chemical reconnaissance (031-503-1015).
   b. Performs precombat checks on vehicles and equipment.
   c. Prepares chemical agent detection equipment.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: Chemical detection equipment should include—
  (1) Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm.
  (2) M256A1 Detector Kit.
  (3) M8 and M9 Detector Paper.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) *M272 Water Test Kit.*		
(5) *M34 Sampling Kit.*		
d. Takes only equipment needed or required for the mission.		
e. Attaches M9 paper to personnel and, if used, vehicles (031-503-1020).		
f. Establishes MOPP4 for the reconnaissance operation before arriving at the reconnaissance start point.		
g. Covers the internal area of vehicle, if used, for team members who dismount vehicle.		
5. The reconnaissance element conducts chemical reconnaissance (031-503-3004).		
a. Uses proper movement techniques IAW METT-TC (071-326-0503).		
b. Uses chemical agent detection equipment and chemical agent detector paper to locate contamination around and within the designated area.		
c. Periodically stops at selected intervals or in areas with visual indications of a chemical attack to check for contamination.		
d. Checks the area for visual indications of chemical contamination.		
TRAINING NOTE: Visual indicators of chemical contamination include—		
(1) *Dead or discolored vegetation.*		
(2) *Discolored soil.*		
(3) *Unusual liquid droplets.*		
(4) *Oily film on water.*		
(5) *Craters caused by bursting munitions.*		
(6) *Absence or lack of insect life.*		
(7) *Dead animals or birds.*		
e. Submits NBC 4 chemical report of findings to higher HQ.		
f. Marks contaminated area IAW OPORD/SOP instructions.		
*6. Reconnaissance leader coordinates the reconnaissance recovery operations.		
a. Checks personnel and, if used, vehicles for contamination.		
b. Segregates contaminated personnel and equipment.		
c. Moves to preselected decontamination site, if necessary.		
d. Coordinates for hasty decontamination, if necessary.		
e. Coordinates for deliberate decontamination, including reconstitution, if applicable.		
7. Reconnaissance element conducts reconnaissance recovery operations.		
a. Reconnaissance element moves to the designated location or returns to higher HQ for debriefing.		
b. Prepares recommendations for PSYOP and CA operations that will protect the indigenous population and negatively exploit the enemy's use of chemical agents.		
c. Moves to preselected decontamination site, if necessary.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1014	Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper
	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
	031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper
	071-326-0503	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: CONDUCT CHEMICAL SURVEY (03-3-R310) (FM 3-3 AND FM 3-19)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: Chemical contamination may be present in an area of operational concern. Monitoring reports do not provide an accurate picture of the hazard area. Higher HQ directs a chemical survey of the area. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB must move to the suspected area of contamination, determine the initial limits, and define the actual boundary of contamination within 50 meters accuracy. Submit results of survey back to higher HQ.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

*1. The SFODB commander issues guidance to the survey team.
    a. Makes sure all members receive the guidance.
    b. Makes sure all members understand the guidance.
 	
  2. The survey team prepares to conduct the survey.
    a. Personnel are dressed in MOPP4 or assume MOPP4 before entering the suspected area of contamination (031-503-1015).
    b. M9 detection paper is attached to personnel and, if used, vehicles (031-503-1020).
    c. Prepares chemical agent detection equipment.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: Chemical detection equipment should include—
    (1)   Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm.
    (2)   M256A1 Detector Kit.
    (3)   M8 and M9 Detector Paper.
    (4)   M272 Water Test Kit.
    (5)   M34 Sampling Kit.
    (6)   Chemical Agent Monitor (if available).
 	
  3. The survey control party briefs the survey team.
    a. States the amount of time allowed for completion of the survey.
    b. Describes the operational situation as it pertains to the conduct of the survey.
    c. Describes the enemy and friendly situation.
    d. States any factual information available about the suspected contaminated area.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: Information should include the source of contamination, the terrain and weather, and the way contamination was delivered.
 	
    e. Issues a clear and concise statement of the mission, including specific tasks to be accomplished.
    f. Briefs the survey team on the concept of operation.
    g. States the specific coordinating instructions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Indicates the time of departure and return.		
i. Identifies primary and alternate routes to and from the suspected area of contamination.		
j. Identifies administrative and logistical requirements.		
k. Identifies required forms.		
l. Identifies required equipment.		
m. Identifies command and signal procedures.		
4. The survey team conducts the survey (031-503-3004).		
a. The survey team moves to the suspected area of contamination.		
b. The survey team leader identifies a starting point for the team IAW the initial overlay.		
c. The survey team leader makes sure the team conducts tests with the M256A1 Detector Kit at the initial testing point.		
d. The survey team uses detector paper and a chemical agent monitor to take readings at every 200-meter interval until the agent reacts with the detector paper or until each team member comes within 200 meters of the attack.		
e. The survey team collects samples at selected intervals.		
f. All team members reach the last test point about the same time.		
g. The survey team leader determines the initial limits of contamination.		
h. The survey team executes a 180▪ turn and proceeds backward along the previously used path halfway to the last sampling point.		
i. The survey team rechecks for contamination.		
j. The survey team continues the bracketing technique to refine the initial limits of hazard.		
k. The survey team leader makes sure all members exit the area using the route established.		
*5. The team leader records the results of the chemical survey on the chemical survey data form (DA Form 1971-3-R).		
a. Annotates the type of agents present within the area.		
b. Annotates the location of contamination.		
c. Annotates the type of detector used.		
6. The survey team completes the survey.		
a. Reports the results to the control party.		
b. Marks the contaminated area.		
c. Moves to designated decontamination area.		
d. Prepares recommendations for PSYOP and CA operations that will protect the indigenous population and negatively exploit the enemy's use of chemical agents.		
* Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
	031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PERFORM CHEMICAL OR BIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION (03-3-R224) (<u>FM 3-5</u>, FM 3-3, FM 3-4, AND FM 3-100)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: A chemical or biological attack has occurred, or the SFODB becomes contaminated while operating in a contaminated area. The SFODB has individual and unit-organic chemical defensive equipment. Additional support may or may not be available for a hasty decontamination. Chemical company support (or equivalent) may or may not be available for deliberate decontamination. The SFODB has sustained chemical or biological casualties in the initial attack. All iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB completes a modified hasty decontamination within 1 hour of the order. The SFODB sustains no additional chemical or biological casualties nor spreads the contamination. The residual contamination does not exceed negligible risk levels (no contaminants detectable with detection equipment held 1 inch from the surface).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB conducts immediate basic skills decontamination (031-503-1007 and 031-503-1015).		
a. The contaminated detachment members start skin decontamination within 1 minute of exposure.		
b. The SFODB increases to MOPP4, if not already at that level, within 8 minutes of exposure (031-503-1002, 031-503-3008).		
c. The SFODB starts personal wipe down of hoods, masks, gloves, and weapons within 15 minutes of exposure (031-503-1007).		
d. The SFODB starts operators' wipe down of control and handling surfaces of contaminated MEE immediately following personal wipe down.		
*2. The SFODB commander directs detachment members to exit the contamination area consistent with the OPORD and the METT-TC.		
a. Makes sure detachment members exit the contamination area as quickly as possible to minimize exposure.		
b. Makes sure detachment members exit the contamination area upwind of the limit of contamination using the shortest route.		
*3. The SFODB commander supervises a modified hasty decontamination.		
a. Directs detachment members to exit the contamination area within 6 hours of exposure if the situation allows.		
b. Determines whether to conduct a hasty decontamination in or out of the contamination area based on the amount of gross contamination, characteristics of the contamination, performance degradation of the SFODB, likelihood of an additional hazard, and support available.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Determines how long the SFODB may continue operations before conducting a hasty decontamination.		
d. Requests available support from the next higher HQ to conduct a complete hasty decontamination.		
e. Designates and marks a downwind burial-type disposal area for contaminated items.		
f. Designates a MOPP removal site upwind of the disposal site.		
g. Designates an AA at least 20 meters upwind of the removal site.		
4. The SFODB conducts a modified hasty decontamination after exiting the contamination area consistent with the OPORD and the METT-TC (031-503-1023, 031-503-3002).		
a. The SFODB initiates a hasty decontamination, if no additional support is available, as soon as the limit of contamination hazard is reached.		
TRAINING NOTE: If additional MOPP gear is available, a hasty decontamination with MOPP exchange should be performed. It may be performed while in the contamination area if the mission requires it. If a resupply of chemical defensive equipment and supplies is not available, the contaminated protective garments may be cached in a manner to take advantage of natural weathering. These items may be reused in an emergency. It may not be possible to cache grossly contaminated items in this manner.		
b. A designated detachment member remains in MOPP4 to collect and dispose of contaminated items.		
c. A designated detachment medic remains in MOPP4 to monitor for contamination between the removal site and the AA. (Uses M8/M9 chemical detection paper for gross contamination on individuals and M256A1 for reducing hazard from the AA.)		
d. The designated medic provides spot decontamination and medical aid (as required).		
e. The SFODB repeats basic skills decontamination procedures if measurements show residual contamination above negligible risk levels.		
f. The SFODB conducts mask removal procedures in the upwind AA (only if the hasty decontamination is conducted outside the contamination area).		
g. The SFODB uses the buddy system to remove MOPP gear (031-503-3009).		
h. The designated detachment member and medic who dispose of contaminated items and monitor contamination remove their MOPP gear last.		
i. The detachment members check each other for residual contamination before entering the AA.		
j. The SFODB maintains security throughout the hasty decontamination process IAW the METT-TC.		
*5. The SFODB commander resumes the mission.		
a. Directs continuous monitoring of the NBC situation.		
b. Submits NBC reports IAW the OPORD.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Adjusts the MOPP level IAW the METT-TC.		
*6. The SFODB commander replenishes chemical defensive equipment and supplies.		
a. Determines the amount of chemical defensive supplies expended.		
b. Requests replacement supplies from external support sources.		
c. Procures replacement field-expedient or locally available chemical supplies and equipment.		
d. Ensures replacement supplies are distributed.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	031-503-1007	Decontaminate Your Skin and Personal Equipment Using an M258A1 Decontamination Kit
	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
STP 21-24-SMCT	031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures
	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: REACT TO A TERRORIST OR AN INSURGENT INCIDENT (31-2-0135) (<u>FM 31-20</u> AND FM 101-5)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has departed its isolation area. It may be anywhere within or en route to or from its JSOA. The SFODB may or may not have all of its organic, assigned, or attached personnel. A terrorist or insurgent incident has occurred that involves all or part of the SFODB. The type of incident is IAW the capabilities of the terrorists or insurgents specified in the higher HQ's OPORD. It may also represent a logical escalation of their capabilities as based on a reasonable estimate of their potential. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB sustains no more than the minimum number of casualties that will still allow for mission execution after the incident's initiating act, and the SFODB does not violate OPSEC as specified in the OPORD.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB consolidates its position.
 	
  a. Defends itself immediately with the means available IAW the ROE specified in the higher HQ OPORD or applicable international treaties and operational agreements (071-311-2007).
 	
  b. Secures and accounts for all detachment personnel and equipment.
 	
  c. Renders first aid, as necessary, to detachment personnel and others IAW detachment capabilities (081-831-0080, 081-831-1000, 081-831-4014, 081-831-4677).
 	
  d. Secures the incident scene to preserve evidence until the arrival of local authorities IAW the mission parameters (travel schedules or others) specified in the OPORD.
 	
2. The SFODB assists local authorities, as requested and authorized.
 	
  a. Notifies local authorities of the incident by the quickest means available.
 	
  b. Requests support (MEDEVAC, security, transportation) from local or U.S. resources as necessary and available (081-831-0101).
 	
  c. Provides to local authorities witness statements from detachment members.
 	
3. The SFODB reports the incident.
 	
  a. Records the details of the incident in the detachment's operational journal, including (if possible) the names of local witnesses, the degree of news media coverage that occurred, and all information obtained from detachment members through debriefings.
 	
  b. Reports the incident and the status of the detachment and the mission to local U.S. authorities and the next higher HQ by the fastest means available.
 	
  c. Prepares and submits written follow-up reports, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The SFODB reorganizes, as necessary.
 	
   a. Medically evacuates wounded detachment members IAW the OPORD.
   b. Reassigns personnel to fill key positions and to reestablish the chain of command.
   c. Requests personnel and equipment replacements.
   d. Makes an estimate of the situation to determine the next best COA that will allow for mission execution IAW the OPORD.
   e. Issues FRAGO based on the selected or revised COA.
   f. Continues mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-311-2007	Engage Targets With an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle
	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
STP 31-18D34-SM-TG	081-833-0080	Triage Casualties on a Conventional Battlefield
	081-833-4014	Determine Death

OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: EVACUATE CASUALTIES (08-2-R316) (FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: Enemy contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded in the battle. Self/buddy aid is being administered. Casualties are being evacuated from fighting positions to designated medical collection points. All methods of evacuation will be employed. This task will be performed simultaneously with other organization tasks. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARD: The SFODB evacuates all wounded as soon as the tactical situation permits without causing additional injury.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB prepares casualties for evacuation (081-831-1040, 08-831-1041).
  a. Separates the wounded from the KIAs.
  b. Identifies evacuation requirements.
  c. Coordinates additional support requirements with higher HQ.
  d. Requests evacuation of casualties from the area IAW the OPORD.
  e. Administers lifesaving first aid to injured personnel before movement if the situation permits.
  f. Evacuates casualties by one- and two-man manual carries or standardized and field-expedient litters, using care not to injure casualties further (081-831-1040 and 081-831-1041).
  g. Loads, unloads, and positions casualties correctly on platoon vehicles used for evacuation.
  h. Requests and coordinates ground and air evacuation correctly.
  i. Loads ground and air ambulances correctly.
  j. Provides appropriate security.
  k. Forwards spot casualty report to higher HQ.
 	
2. SFODB personnel remove casualties from vehicles.
  a. Remove casualties from vehicles, using care not to injure casualties further.
  b. Administer lifesaving first aid to the injured before removal if the situation permits.
 	
3. SFODB personnel evacuate casualties by manual carry techniques.
  a. Evacuate casualties using the one- and two-man manual carry techniques.
  b. Use the carry appropriate to the situation and injury.
  c. Use care not to injure casualties further.
 	
4. SFODB personnel construct and use field-expedient litters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Construct litters for the evacuation of casualties without the litter falling apart during movement.		
b. Construct the type of litter appropriate for the condition of the casualty.		
5. SFODB personnel evacuate casualties by litter.		
a. Secure the casualty properly on the litter.		
b. Evacuate the casualty to prevent further injury or complication to the casualty's condition.		
6. SFODB personnel evacuate contaminated casualties.		
a. Attempt decontamination before loading.		
b. Cover the casualties to minimize the hazards of contamination.		
c. Unload casualties at designated decontamination station.		
d. Do not take contaminated casualties and vehicles directly to entrance of a "clean" medical treatment facility.		
e. Decontaminate vehicles, equipment, and crew.		
7. SFODB personnel evacuate enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties.		
a. Evacuate EPW casualties by the same standards as used for friendly casualties.		
b. Maintain security of EPW casualties.		
c. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before evacuation.		
d. Do not make weapons or ordnance accessible to the EPWs during evacuation.		
8. The SFODB commander requests MEDEVAC (O1-8310.00-1016).		
a. Evaluates the situation.		
b. Gathers required information for submission of a MEDEVAC request.		
c. Submits MEDEVAC request.		
d. Uses correct brevity code items.		
e. Does not include extraneous information.		
f. Transmits information accurately and in proper sequence.		
g. Transmits request by secure means or encrypts it.		
h. Does not submit evacuation requests for personnel who do not require evacuation or who are KIA.		
i. Evacuates casualties as soon as they are ready for movement and evacuation means are available.		
j. Does not evacuate casualties capable of returning to duty following minor treatment.		
k. Uses categories of precedence.		
l. Makes sure the pickup site provides sufficient space for hovering, landing, and takeoff of helicopter. (NOTE: If air MEDEVAC is anticipated, remove all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before arrival of the helicopter.)		
9. SFODB personnel assist in loading MEDEVAC vehicles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Employ proper loading techniques. b. Load patients in the sequence directed by the crew without unnecessary discomfort to patients. c. Follow proper safety procedures for both patients and personnel while around aircraft. d. Maintain security of the landing site.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1040	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry
	081-831-1041	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: USE PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (44-2-R307) (<u>FM 44-8</u>, FM 20-3, FM 44-80, FM 55-30, AND FM 101-5-1)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is operating in an AOB, GPF location, or tactical HN base as outlined in the OPORD. The political or tactical scenario has brought hostile aircraft within range of the detachment's location. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB limits the ability of the hostile aircraft to strike its facilities and equipment effectively.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB uses passive air defense measures.		
a. Uses all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide the SFODB and limit its vulnerability.		
b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.		
c. Establishes air attack alarms.		
d. Disperses vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.		
e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment to protect personnel and vulnerable MEE.		
f. Mans OPs to provide warning of approaching aircraft.		
g. Depicts enemy air status on the OPCEN SITMAP.		
2. The SFODB uses passive air defense measures in a convoy when applicable.		
a. Makes sure the convoy commander briefs all personnel.		
b. Camouflages vehicles and equipment before moving out.		
c. Selects column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain.		
d. Alternates individuals and crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks.		
e. Assigns air guards.		
f. Identifies threat aircraft visually.		
g. Establishes air attack alarms.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: TAKE SMALL ARMS AIR DEFENSE MEASURES AGAINST HOSTILE AIRCRAFT (44-2-R308) (FM 44-8 AND FM 44-80)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB is operating in an AOB, GPF location, or tactical HN base as outlined in the OPORD. The political or tactical scenario has brought enemy aircraft within range of the SFODB. The SFODB receives early warning of aircraft in the area. The SFODB personnel detect unknown or hostile aircraft. Some iterations should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB destroys or wards off all attacking aircraft.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The SFODB takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking a stationary unit.		
a. Gives the air attack alarm.		
b. Occupies defensive positions.		
c. Searches assigned sectors for aircraft.		
d. Identifies and reports the presence of aircraft in the area to higher HQ (878-920-1002).		
e. Remains concealed and holds fire to avoid revealing its position.		
TRAINING NOTE: When making the decision to fire at nonattacking hostile aircraft with small arms, consider the assigned mission and tactical situation. The SFODB must positively visually identify aircraft before engaging with small arms unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.		
f. Orders the element to engage.		
g. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns) (441-091-1102).		
TRAINING NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the SFODB's position.		
h. Reloads weapons following engagement.		
i. Reports results of the engagement to higher or supported HQ.		
j. Evaluates the situation and changes position as directed by HQ.		
2. The SFODB takes active air defense measures against hostile aircraft not attacking a moving unit.		
a. Gives the air attack alarm.		
b. Disperses vehicles laterally and in depth or continues to move the unit.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Moves vehicles to covered or concealed positions. All personnel prepare to engage the aircraft or to increase dispersion.		
d. Engages nonattacking aircraft only as directed.		
e. Visually identifies threat aircraft.		
f. Reports all aircraft action to higher or supported HQ.		
g. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns).		
h. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.		
3. The SFODB takes active air defense measures against aircraft attacking a stationary unit.		
a. Gives air attack alarm.		
b. Engages attacking aircraft immediately (per engagement procedures).		
c. Reloads weapons following engagement of aircraft.		
d. Continues to scan assigned sectors for additional aircraft.		
e. Identifies attacking aircraft visually.		
f. Reports any aircraft action to higher or supported HQ.		
g. Evaluates the situation and changes position as directed by higher or supported HQ.		
4. The SFODB takes active air defense measures during convoy movement.		
a. Alerts vehicle commanders of impending attack.		
b. Disperses vehicles alternately to shoulders of the road (off road if possible). Turns to covered and concealed positions if terrain permits.		
c. Maintains vehicle intervals or increases interval or dispersion. Uses evasive driving techniques.		
d. Dismounts and takes up firing positions.		
e. Prepares personnel to fire on orders of the senior individual present or automatically returns fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft is attacking.		
f. Engages the aircraft with all available small arms.		
g. Reloads weapons following the attack.		
h. Identifies the aircraft.		
i. Reports the attack to higher or supported HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: EVACUATE THE ADVANCED OPERATIONAL BASE (31-2-0136) (FM 31-20, FM 101-5, AND TC 12-17)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been ordered to cease mission execution and conduct emergency evacuation, or the displacement plan assumptions become fact and the SFODB commander orders evacuation. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB terminates evacuation at the designated location. All personnel (organic, assigned, or attached) are accounted for, and all MEE, COMSEC material, and sensitive information are evacuated, destroyed, or cached.

TRAINING NOTE: This task can be applied to several different training scenarios. The termination of the evacuation operation may be at a location in or out of the HN. At the termination location, one of following three scenarios may take place:
- *The SFODB may evacuate to an alternate AOB, at which time a transition to follow-on missions may take place.*
- *The SFODB may be at its planned redeployment location, and the mission is terminated.*
- *The in-country location to which the SFODB evacuates may require additional movement to the redeployment area.*

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The SFODB commander alerts and advises all U.S. personnel of his intent to initiate the displacement plan.		
a. Uses notification procedures, as outlined by the displacement plan.		
b. Establishes accountability of all U.S. personnel under his control.		
c. Notifies the higher commander if an evacuation operation is initiated.		
d. Dispatches advance party and security elements to the alternate AOB location (as appropriate).		
2. The SFODB safeguards sensitive equipment and information.		
a. Establishes accountability of all sensitive equipment and documents.		
b. Destroys, evacuates, or caches sensitive equipment and documents IAW the displacement plan.		
3. The SFODB commander and S3 issue a FRAGO, as required.		
a. Assess COAs in the displacement plan IAW METT-TC and the S2-revised intelligence estimate.		
b. Select a COA based on the assessment.		
c. Establish priorities of movement for personnel and equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Develop a FRAGO for selected COA.
    e. Disseminate a FRAGO to all personnel.
 	
4. The SFODB commander prepares the alternate or subordinate base for continuity of operations.
    a. Shifts a minimal of operational communications to the alternate or subordinate base.
    b. Shifts emergency communications to the alternate or subordinate base.
    c. Establishes intelligence links.
    d. Provides MOC packages to the alternate ISOFAC (as appropriate).
 	
5. The SFODB evacuates the base of operations and moves to an initial AA.
    a. Conducts evacuation IAW the FRAGO or the displacement plan.
    b. Follows specified routes during movement.
    c. Conducts accountability of personnel and equipment at the initial AA.
 	
6. The SFODB moves to the specified evacuation termination location.
    a. Executes movement IAW the displacement plan or the FRAGO.
    b. Maintains communications with the higher U.S. commander as required or as feasible.
    c. Maintains continuous accountability of all personnel and sensitive material.
 	
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK

ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: PROVIDE INTELLIGENCE SUPPORT TO SF OPERATIONS (31-2-0129) (<u>FM 34-36</u>, AR 380-5, AR 381-10, FM 31-20, FM 34-1, FM 34-3, FM 34-130, FM 100-20, AND FM 101-5)

ITERATION:	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**(Circle)**
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has been tasked to conduct a FID mission to organize, train, advise, and assist HN forces in support of U.S. objectives as defined in the OPORD from higher HQ. The SFODB and the required SFODAs have completed mission analysis, planning, and preparation. The SFODB OPLAN has been approved, with all amplifying documents, including the IPB and the intelligence collection plan to support the commander's PIR/IR. The SFODB has deployed to the JSOA IAW the OPORD and has established an AOB. The SFODB has been task organized into an operations cell, a support cell, and a communications cell as part of the AOB. Courier services have been established between the AOB and the higher command or agency sensitive compartmented information facility. The SFODB has been augmented IAW the OPLAN. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB provides intelligence support to the deployed SFODAs IAW the SFODB OPORD.

TRAINING NOTE: Some of the subtasks and standards listed below may be performed before or concurrently with the establishment of the AOB. For example, both the IPB and the collection plan may require some changes between arrival of the SFODB in-country and the establishment of the AOB. A sudden upswing in terrorist or insurgent activity could require a PIR/IR update and a realignment of intelligence collection priorities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	**GO**	**NO-GO**

1. FODB directs intelligence support to the SFODAs.
 	
  a. Determines intelligence requirements through review of the commander's guidance and concept of the operation, IPB, and METT-TC analysis (301-349-2802, 301-349-2806, 301-349-2807, 301-349-2808, 301-349-2810, 301-349-2811, 301-349-2812, 301-349-4350).
 	
  b. Receives and analyzes new intelligence requirements IAW FM 34-3, FM 34-36, and FM 34-130 (301-349-4230).
 	
  c. Identifies information gaps and unresolved requests for information (RFIs).
 	
  d. Reviews existing databases and answers RFI from SFODAs and higher and adjacent commands.
 	
  e. Recommends changes to the PIR and IR based on changes in METT-TC, IPB, and receipt of PIR/IR of higher commands (301-349-2201, 301-349-4210).
 	
2. SFODB operations cell performs intelligence collection management and dissemination functions.
 	
TRAINING NOTE: The collection management process is cyclic and dependent on the existence of a collection plan. FM 34-1, Appendix H, provides a suggested format for the collection plan. It also notes that the collection plan has no set format. It may be		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
prepared as a simple fragmentary work sheet or as a long, detailed plan. Although the SFODB S2 can formulate a collection plan mentally, the planning of the collection effort is easier and less subject to error when a written plan is used. A written plan also ensures continuity of effort. It is always recommended.		
a. Determines available resources to satisfy IRs IAW FM 34-36 and 34-130.		
b. Develops a collection plan based on approved PIR/IR and availability of collection assets IAW FM 34-36 and FM 34-130 (301-349-4220).		
c. Prepares collection taskings for organic or attached assets IAW FM 34-36 and FM 34-130.		
d. Prepares and forwards RFIs as appropriate IAW FM 34-130 and FM 34-36.		
e. Accurately accounts for all RFIs and tracks RFIs from higher HQ.		
f. Updates the collection planning IAW FM 34-36 and FM 34-130.		
g. Prepares intelligence reports, intelligence summaries, and periodic intelligence reports IAW the unit SOP, SOI, or the OPORD.		
h. Integrates specialized human intelligence (HUMINT) and signals intelligence (SIGINT) support for force protection.		
i. Monitors the intelligence collection effort of the SFODB and SFODAs through personal inspections and review of reports to make sure the priorities established in the OPORD are being followed.		
j. Makes sure all-source information is processed to answer RFIs or to produce a special or recurring report.		
k. Forwards to higher HQ RFIs that cannot be satisfied with organic or attached assets.		
3. SFODB operations cell processes information and produces intelligence (301-349-1009).		
a. Maintains an intelligence journal on DA Form 1594 IAW FM 101-5 and unit SOPs.		
b. Analyzes new information IAW FM 34-3, FM 101-5, and unit SOPs.		
c. Posts the SITMAP with the most current OB IAW FM 101-5-1 and unit SOPs.		
d. Prepares appropriate SITMAP overlays that support mission requirements and depict, as a minimum, any terrorist or insurgent action.		
TRAINING NOTE: FM 34-36 and FM 34-130 specify the required overlays and templates for IPB. FM 34-3 contains numerous suggestions for SITMAP overlays that could be useful during FID. They include incident, insurgent, trap, population status, and personalities and contacts overlays. However, it is the SFODB commander's call as to which overlays will be used.		
e. Maintains an intelligence workbook IAW FM 101-5 (301-349-4340).		
f. Creates and or updates working files.		
g. Makes sure working files are organized and cross-referenced to allow ready access to all available information.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

TRAINING NOTE: The working file may include OB and intelligence workbooks, OB and personality card files, a hot file, area study files, a resource file, a current propaganda and PSYOP file, and a coordinates register. Although many of the documents that make up the working file have no definitive formats, FM 34-3, FM 34-36, FM 34-130, and FM 101-5 all contain suggested formats.
 	
    h. Updates databases as required.
    i. Assigns a reliability rating to all organically generated sources of information based upon past experience.
    j. Updates the IPB with the most current intelligence IAW FM 34-36 and FM 34-130.
    k. Coordinates continually with the SFODB S3 to integrate the latest intelligence into estimates, plans, and orders.
    l. Prepares the intelligence estimate and S2 portion of the SITREP IAW the OPORD, SOI, or unit SOP.
 	
*4. FODB S2 administers the information security program.
    a. Establishes the procedures for storing, disseminating, marking, and accounting for classified documents IAW AR 380-5 (121-004-1518).
    b. Submits reports of loss or compromise of classified information IAW AR 380-5.
    c. Makes sure the transfer of classified information is IAW AR 380-5 and unit SOPs.
    d. Establishes procedures IAW AR 380-5 for destruction of classified information.
 	
*5. FODB operations warrant officer manages physical security for the AOB.
    a. Assesses the AOB security plan and adjusts security posture based upon the threat.
    b. Establishes a program to control access to facilities.
    c. Supervises security procedures for the communications cell.
 	
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18-SM-TG	121-004-1518	Process Classified Material
STP 31-18F4-SM-TG	301-349-1009	Process Combat Information
	301-349-2201	List Information Gaps (Priority Intelligence Requirements/Information Requirements) for a Specific Operation
	301-349-2802	Determine Overlay Requirements Using the Terrain Factor Analysis Matrix
	301-349-2806	Develop a Situation Template
	301-349-2807	Identify Decision Points Along Each Avenue of Approach
	301-349-2808	Develop an Event Template Based on a Situation Template
	301-349-2810	Identify Target Areas of Interest
	301-349-2811	Develop an Event Analysis Matrix for Each Mobility Corridor
	301-349-2812	Determine Weather Overlay Requirements
	301-349-4210	List Indicators for Priority Intelligence Requirements/Information Requirements for a Specific Operation
	301-349-4220	Prepare a Collection Work Sheet and a Collection Plan
	301-349-4230	Process Data for Use in the Interpretation and Production of Intelligence
	301-349-4320	Maintain Order of Battle Workbook and Files
	301-349-4350	Develop Doctrinal Templates for Threat Evaluation

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: COORDINATE FOR COMBAT SUPPORT (31-2-0130) (<u>FM 101-5</u>, FM 31-20, FM 90-8, FM 100-5, AND FM 100-25)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	T		P			U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has established an AOB. The SFODB's subordinate SFODAs have deployed and are providing advisory assistance to battalion-sized FN elements. The SFODB is task organized and augmented IAW the OPORD. CS assets are available from U.S. forces, FN forces, or both. This task may be executed concurrently while providing advisory assistance.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB provides all available CS to subordinate SFODAs IAW priorities established by the commander's intent, the OPORD, and METT-TC requirements.

TRAINING NOTE: Some of the subtasks and standards may have been accomplished before or concurrently with the establishment of the AOB. For example, integration of the available CS assets into OPORDs should take place during mission planning. However, a continuous refinement process takes place during operations. Should the SFODB also be required to provide advisory assistance, the requirements for CS assets could change dramatically.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

1. The SFODB integrates all available (FN and U.S.) CS into OPORDs.
    a. Integrates all available CS in SFODB OPORDs.
    b. Provides all available CS for integration into the SFODA OPORD.
    c. Integrates SFODB and SFODA OPORDs with those of FN units.
    d. Plans contingencies for critical CS requirements, allowing for the possibility of nonfulfillment of requests.		

2. The SFODB establishes communications procedures for CS requests.
    a. Establishes communications procedures with the supporting unit, including exchanging applicable SOI information.
    b. Establishes communications procedures with subordinate units, if not included in unit SOP or OPORD.
    c. Establishes primary, alternate, contingency, and emergency signals and communications procedures for all CS requests.
    d. Establishes test procedures for all communications procedures.		

3. The SFODB establishes control procedures for FS.
    a. Identifies FS assets.
    b. Establishes coordination and requests procedures with the FS units, both FN and U.S.
    c. Establishes coordination and request procedures with subordinate units, if not included in unit SOP or OPORD.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

d. Reviews all planned fires, including final protection fires for SFODA positions.
 	
e. Integrates fire control measures with higher, adjacent, and subordinate units, both FN and U.S. The integration includes coordinated fire lines, restricted fire lines, FS coordination lines, no fire areas, and restricted fire areas.
 	
4. The SFODB processes support requests.
 	
   a. Receives requests from SFODAs and FN counterparts.
 	
   b. Prioritizes requests IAW higher HQ or SFODB commander's guidance.
 	
   c. Requests alternate CS assets if primary asset is not available.
 	
   d. Checks to make sure CS assets are supplied IAW requests.
 	
5. The SFODB controls CS employment.
 	
   a. Makes sure the least amount of combat power is employed that will accomplish the CS requirement while limiting collateral damage.
 	
   b. Determines effectiveness of CS assets.
 	
   c. Develops new COAs for ineffectively employed CS assets.
 	
   d. Develops new plans for selected COA for employment of CS assets.
 	
   e. Incorporates new plans into present the scheme of maneuver.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Reference	Task Number	Task Title
STP 31-18B34-SM-TG	061-284-4219	Coordinate/Prepare the Fire Support Portion of the Maneuver OPORD

OPFOR TASKS

None

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INTEGRATE CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS (31-2-0131) (<u>FM 41-10</u>, FM 31-20, AND FM 100-25)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has received the mission, has begun planning and preparation, and has been given the CA area study in preparation for planning and conducting its operational mission. The battalion (or higher) commander has approved its OPLAN. The SFODB is in planning or has deployed into its JSOA to provide advisory assistance in support of objectives specified by the higher in-country U.S. commander. CA personnel may be attached to the SFODB. If no CA personnel are attached to the SFODB, the SFODB commander has appointed and prepared a detachment CA officer/NCO. Some iterations of this task may be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB establishes contact and attempts to coordinate with appropriate nonmilitary agencies of the HN and U.S. mission, considers synchronization of its military operations with the programs of these agencies during planning and execution, and advises supported HN forces on integrating CMO into their military operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The SFODB SO technician supervises the analysis of the mission to determine CMO requirements.		
a. Determines the political, economic, social, and cultural factors that influence SFODB operations in the JSOA.		
b. Determines the security needs of the SFODB and of the local population in the JSOA.		
c. Requests and reviews the internal development objectives, policies, plans, and programs of the HN, as well as the U.S. mission from the next higher HQ.		
d. Includes the CA estimate in the military decision-making process.		
e. Requests any CA support it determines is required to conduct the mission.		
2. The SFODB coordinates its operations with the appropriate HN, U.S. mission, and international agencies.		
a. Defines the CA mission and CMO tasks.		
b. Requests and reviews (if received) U.S. aid 1- and 5-year plans.		
c. Requests information on other CA activities within the JSOA by other agencies from the SFODB's next higher HQ (military group and FOB, as defined in OPORD).		
d. Conducts a postinfiltration area assessment to validate and update CMO-related information in the area study. Incorporates changes and additions in the updated area assessment and modifies plans and operations to account for these changes.		
3. The SFODB provides civil assistance to HN government agencies.		
a. Conducts CMO based on the CA annex to the OPORD.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Supervises attached or assigned CA personnel.		
c. Directs and supports assigned or attached CA units of detachment to company size.		
4. The SFODB establishes contact with local governments within the JSOA and advises HN forces to do the same.		
a. Takes actions intended to establish and maintain favorable relationships with the local population and the U.S.- recognized government.		
b. Uses civil communication available in the OA to disseminate civil information.		
5. The SFODB advises and assists HN forces in planning and implementing a civil defense program.		
a. Analyzes the civil defense structure to make sure it meets the security needs previously identified in task step 1b.		
b. Assesses civil defense planning for the presence and effectiveness of emergency welfare services and emergency food, water, sanitation, and medical supplies.		
c. Coordinates civil defense activities of fire, police, and rescue personnel with those of the military to achieve unity of effort.		
d. Identifies civilian evacuation plans and assesses their adequacy.		
6. The SFODB advises and assists HN forces supporting displaced person operations.		
a. Advises the HN to estimate the number of displaced civilians, their points of origin, and their anticipated direction of movement. Assists in the estimation process.		
b. Advises and assists in the planning of movement control measures and evacuation of dislocated civilians.		
c. Assists in coordinating with military forces for transportation, military police support, military intelligence screening and interrogation, and medical activities, as needed.		
d. Advises and assists in establishing and supervising the operation of temporary or semipermanent camps for displaced civilians.		
e. Advises and assists in the resettlement or return of displaced civilians to their homes IAW U.S. policy and HN policy and objectives.		
f. Advises and assists HN and U.S. agencies on camps and relief measures for displaced civilians.		
g. Monitors the conduct of movement plans for displaced civilians. Advises as the SFODB feels is required.		
7. The SFODB advises and assists HN forces and agencies planning and implementing population and resource control (PRC) programs.		
a. Identifies PRC requirements.		
b. Assists in planning and coordinating PRC measures that meet these requirements.		
c. Integrates PRC measures with PSYOP to obtain popular acceptance and support of the measures.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Provides advice and assistance indirectly to minimize direct U.S. involvement and emphasize low-visibility U.S. support of an HN program.		
e. Evaluates adequacy of PRC programs. Recommends improvements as required.		
8. The SFODB identifies and acquires HN resources to assist the SFODB in mission execution.		
a. Determines the political organizations and key leaders existing in the JSOA and surrounding country to facilitate gaining civilian cooperation.		
b. Obtains civilian support required and appropriate to the missions.		
9. The SFODB advises and assists the HN to minimize civilian interference with tactical operations.		
a. Anticipates civilian reactions to planned military operations and plans to accommodate that reaction.		
b. Advises and assists the HN to provide aid that will improve conditions for civilians who are destitute to reduce theft and destruction of both military and indigenous property to the maximum extent consistent with available resources. Determines methods and techniques of operation that will be most acceptable to the populace and still allow for the accomplishment of the SFODB mission. Plans operations to use their techniques.		
c. Identifies military COAs that will avoid civilian population centers and rural activities whenever feasible.		
d. Coordinates PRC measures to remove civilians from probable battle areas with HN military and civil authorities.		
10. The SFODB meets the legal and moral obligations to the local populace and the families of supporting HN forces.		
a. Observes laws of armed conflict and ROE.		
b. Reports human rights violations by HN forces or insurgent forces to higher HQ.		
c. Acts promptly to prevent and stop human rights violations within capabilities.		
d. Establishes medical treatment programs, on space available basis, within capabilities.		
e. Provides emergency disaster relief in a life-threatening situation within capabilities.		
11. The SFODB advises and assists in protecting cultural properties in the JSOA.		
a. Locates and identifies religious buildings, shrines, and consecrated places, and recommends ROE that protect them during military operations.		
b. Respects the same ROE.		
*12. The SFODB SO technician coordinates and integrates CMO with PSYOP.		
a. Advises and assists the HN to make sure the populace is informed of tactical victories and U.S. and HN civic action efforts pertinent to it. Coordinates available U.S. support to HN forces to accomplish this effort.		
b. Advises the HN to reduce PRC when the enemy is denied support and supplies.		
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

ELEMENT: SFODB

TASK: INTEGRATE PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS (31-2-0132) (<u>FM 33-1</u>, FM 31-20, AND FM 100-25)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:	**T**		**P**			**U**	**(Circle)**

CONDITIONS: The SFODB has completed mission analysis, planning, and preparation. The battalion (or higher) has approved its OPLAN and ordered mission execution. The SFODB has deployed into its JSOA to provide advisory assistance in support of objectives specified by the higher in-country U.S. commander. PSYOP personnel may be attached to the SFODB. If no PSYOP personnel are attached, the SFODB commander has appointed and trained a detachment PSYOP officer or NCO.

TASK STANDARDS: The SFODB considers PSYOP as a planning factor in all its activities, and behaves on and off duty IAW the standards of conduct in DOD 5500.7-R, any published policies of higher HQ, the accepted norms and mores of the HN, and in such a manner as to communicate compliance and support for official U.S. policies to the HN forces and the local populace.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The SFODB SO technician supervises the analysis of the mission and determines PSYOP requirements.		
a. Assesses the psychological impact of the SFODB's presence, activities, and operations in the JSOA.		
b. Reviews OPORDs to make sure they support U.S. and HN psychological objectives using the assessment from task step 1a.		
2. The SFODB SO technician coordinates the analysis of each of the detachment's official duties to determine its psychological effects.		
a. Considers the psychological impact on the populace of SFODB participation in events such as military ceremonies, religious services, and social events when deciding whether or not to participate.		
b. Determines the psychological effects of training during periods of national holidays or religious holidays. Schedules IAW this determination.		
3. The SFODB integrates planned PSYOP activities into each SFODB operation to establish a favorable U.S. image in the HN and further accomplishment of the SFODB mission.		
a. Coordinates with trained PSYOP assets to capitalize on positive mission successes.		
b. Facilitates the use of HN and commercial media assets that influence the JSOA by providing advice and coordinating with involved U.S. agencies.		
c. Emphasizes U.S. support of HN programs, not U.S. unilateral operations in all PSYOP products and on all operations.		
d. Incorporates PSYOP activities that portray a positive U.S. and HN image in each SFODB activity.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO

4. The SFODB advises and assists HN forces in gaining or retaining the support of the local populace, discrediting the insurgents, and isolating the insurgents from the populace.
 	
   a. Influences the HN forces through advice and example to conduct themselves IAW acceptable military norms and mores of ethics and professionalism, including the law of land warfare, the principles of leadership in FM 22-100, and the standards of conduct in DOD 5500.7-R.
 	
   b. Trains the HN leadership in the advantages and techniques of maximizing public opinion that favors the HN and SFODB mission and discredits the insurgents.
 	
   c. Coordinates for close and continuous PSYOP support to maximize the effect of CA operations, including advising the HN to use its own resources in the same manner.
 	
   d. Integrates PSYOP capabilities into PRC measures to disseminate information and explain the rationale for the program.
 	
*5. The SFODB SO technician coordinates local PSYOP activities.
 	
   a. Makes sure activities are approved by the HN and U.S. mission.
 	
   b. Makes sure activities remain consistent with national PSYOP objectives and themes.
 	
   c. Coordinates military and CMO activities with appropriate U.S. and HN agencies to assure compliance with HN and U.S. mission PSYOP guidance.
 	
   d. Monitors PSYOP activities for mission enhancement and the commander's intent and advises changes where required.
 	
Indicates a leader task step.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS GO							
TRAINING STATUS GO/NO-GO							

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS AND OPFOR TASKS

None

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS

6-1. General.

a. This chapter contains guidance on preparing and conducting SFODB evaluations. The evaluations give the chain of command an assessment of the SFODB's capability to conduct its wartime missions. The SFODB commander can use evaluations as a diagnostic tool for developing future training plans. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 are the basis of the SFODB evaluation.

b. The SFODB commander uses external evaluations to assess the unit's capabilities. He administers these evaluations at the discretion of the chain of command. The evaluations are usually planned, administered, and evaluated at a level two HQ higher than the unit being evaluated. The SFODB modifies the evaluation based on METT-TC and other considerations, such as CONPLANs.

c. The unit's METL, in conjunction with the T&EOs of this ARTEP MTP (Chapter 5), provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation.

d. A successful evaluation, one that accurately measures the unit's ability to accomplish its wartime mission, depends heavily on proper preparation, including planning, coordinating, and where applicable, conducting a rehearsal or an evaluator's talk-through of major exercise events. A written evaluation plan that provides pertinent evaluation details is also vitally important.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation Scenario.

a. To measure the unit's capabilities accurately, the commander must standardize evaluation procedures. After the SFODB commander identifies and lists the evaluation tasks, he prepares a broad exercise scenario.

b. The evaluation scenario establishes a logical sequence in which the tasks are usually performed on the battlefield. The scenario depicts general events and planning factors. The SFODB commander revises, refines, and expands the scenario in subsequent work.

c. Figure 6-1 (page 6-1) is a sample evaluation scenario based on the mission-to-collective tasks matrix in Chapter 2. The evaluation is generic in that it does not take into consideration CONPLANs or training limitations. The criterion for mission selection was the number of tasks in a given mission. The SFODB commander analyzed the matrix to make sure the majority of tasks were covered. When evaluating the unit, evaluators should consider survivability and concurrent tasks. The times and days for event performance are a basis for further tasking by the evaluator during execution of the events. These events only serve as a guideline for including other tasks from survivability or concurrent tasks as listed in Chapter 5 during annual training or multiple unit training assemblies (MUTAs).

d. To ensure the evaluation accurately measures the SFODB's capabilities, the SF command HQ or other designated command HQ must develop a plan to prepare, administer, evaluate, and report the examination results. This section outlines the preparation procedures for evaluating the SFODB.

6-3. Identifying the Mission-Essential Task List.
The unit's METL provides the foundation for external evaluations. It serves as the start point in developing the evaluation. The METL should be readily available from the unit and its various HQ. All METL items must be evaluated to obtain an accurate assessment of the unit's capability to perform its mission. All tasks must be successfully performed if the unit is to accomplish its critical wartime mission. In cases where the commander uses the evaluation primarily as a training diagnostic tool, he may modify the list of evaluated tasks.

Evaluation Scenario

Provide C^2 for Operational Detachments

Event	Action	Duration	Day
1	Alert the Company for a Mission	4 hours	1
2	Issue an OPORD to the Company	2 hours	1
3	Conduct Mission Planning	2 hours	1
4	Conduct Mission Planning	8 hours	2
5	Conduct Premission Activities	8 hours	2
6	Conduct Mission Planning	8 hours	3
7	Conduct Premission Activities	8 hours	3
8	Conduct Premission Activities	8 hours	4
9	Deploy to the Operational Area	8 hours*	5
10	Establish an AOB as an MSB for FID	8 hours	6
11	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	7
12	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	8
13	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	9
14	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	10
15	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	11
16	Operate an AOB as an MSB for FID	24 hours	12
17	Prepare for Redeployment	8 hours	13
18	Redeploy to a Specified Location	8 hours*	14
	Total Time	**224 hours**	

* Time to the area may increase or decrease, based on the distance and mode of travel to the OA.

NOTE: This sample scenario can be adjusted accordingly, based on the time and availability of training funds and training locations.

Figure 6-1. Sample evaluation scenario.

6-4. Preparing the Evaluation.

a. The method for preparing the evaluation depends on the intent of the commander administering the evaluation. If the evaluation is to determine the SFODB's ability to execute its wartime missions, the evaluation should be a mirror of the missions required by CONPLANs. If the evaluation is to be a diagnostic tool for the SFODB commander to develop future training plans, the emphasis should be on devising an evaluation that gives the commander an opportunity to see his unit perform as many tasks or subtasks as possible in the given time, with as little redundancy as possible.

(1) The basis of the evaluation is the unit's METL if the intent of the evaluation is to determine the SFODB's capability to accomplish its wartime missions. The nature of the SFODB's support missions dictates that the supported unit's wartime mission also be considered.

(2) In formulating a diagnostic evaluation to develop future training plans, the SFODB commander identifies the missions the SFODB might execute. He selects supporting missions with limited amounts of collective task and subtask redundancies. By using the missions-to-collective tasks matrix in Chapter 2, the SFODB commander can minimize redundancy. Minimizing redundancy gives the SFODB a more comprehensive evaluation in a given time frame as compared to a unit evaluation based solely on missions.

(3) After the supporting missions and collective tasks are identified, they are arranged in a logical sequence based on the order they will occur in the detailed scenario. The selected supporting missions and collective tasks are then grouped into events. The end of each event represents a point where the MTP scenario may be interrupted for assessment, AAR, or a change in the scenario. After the supporting missions and collective tasks have been subdivided into events, they may be listed on an evaluator's work sheet (Figure 6-2). The work sheet may serve as both the military incident list and the base document for the AAR.

b. Enemy situations, friendly situations, WARNORDs, FRAGOs, OPORDs, overlays, milestones, and message input must be developed to support the scenario. The production of these documents, which are a vital requirement for a well-coordinated MTP, affords an outstanding opportunity for staff training.

c. The senior evaluator or the operations officer develops evaluator information packets. These packets contain the military incident list, the evaluator AAR work sheets, meeting requirements, and the milestone schedule.

d. The master events list describes the events that cue the unit to perform its mission-essential tasks. When developing the master events list, the SFODB commander must make sure the events are incorporated and directly correlate to ARTEP MTP collective tasks. When planning and developing the exercise, the primary focus must be on making sure the evaluation gives the unit an opportunity to perform its mission-essential tasks and to perform them to the standard specified in this ARTEP MTP.

e. In preparing the SFODB evaluation, the evaluating HQ arranges the evaluators, OPFORs, role players, OCs, and support personnel into an organizational structure that allows for C^2. The structure should allow for equitable use of support personnel, facilities, and equipment.

Evaluator's Work Sheet

Provide C^2 for Operational Detachments: 224 Hours

Event	Task Title	Task Number	Training Status	
1	Conduct Mission Planning	31-2-0100	GO	NO-GO
2	Conduct Premission Activities	31-2-0101	GO	NO-GO
3	Deploy to the Operational Area	31-2-0102	GO	NO-GO
4	Establish an Advanced Operational Base	31-2-0103	GO	NO-GO
5	Operate as an Advanced Operational Base	31-2-0104	GO	NO-GO
6	Redeploy to a Specified Location	31-2-0108	GO	NO-GO

Figure 6-2. Sample portion of an evaluator's work sheet.

6-5. Determining Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations. Resource requirements and other planning considerations become evident as the evaluation expands and develops. To ensure a successful evaluation, however, scheduling, coordinating, and other planning should begin in the early stages of development. The evaluation team or staff agency performs the following duties:

a. Schedules training areas.

b. Prepares a calendar of events and key milestones leading through the evaluation to the final AAR and into the preparation of the AAR.

c. Identifies individual and unit support requirements. Tasks the applicable agencies. Includes personnel and units required to perform (OC), safety, support, OPFOR, and all other functions.

d. Requisitions training ammunition, training aids, training materials, fuel, rations, and other required supplies.

e. Coordinates unit movement and transportation support requirements.

f. Identifies equipment requirements and coordinates support.

g. Notifies supporting and supported units of the planned evaluation dates. Coordinates adjustments, including personnel and unit support required to perform the unit's mission while it is undergoing evaluation.

h. Schedules and conducts safety training.

i. Schedules OC training and orientation sessions.

j. Identifies and schedules OPFOR training, if required.

6-6. Standardizing Evaluation Procedures. Standardizing evaluation procedures is essential in making sure the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all units commanded by the evaluating HQ.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The evaluating HQ designs, distributes, and collects the evaluator's work sheets and determines which demographic work sheets (for example, unit personnel figures, unit turnover rates) are used in the report.

b. The senior evaluator makes sure the evaluation is standardized. He also determines the overall training status of the SFODB or the ability of the SFODB to conduct its critical wartime mission.

6-8. Selecting and Training the Evaluators.

a. Selecting and training the evaluators are essential in making sure the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all SF units.

b. At the SFODB level, the number of required evaluators varies, depending on the technique of the evaluation, the complexity of the exercise, and the use of the required control center.

c. Regardless of the evaluation organization employed, evaluators must know the SFODB missions, organization, equipment, and doctrinal employment. Ideally, evaluators should be at least equal in rank to the staff officer being evaluated. The chief evaluator should be at least of equal rank to the SFODB commander. To be selected for evaluation duty, the evaluator must have previous experience in the position being evaluated.

d. To ensure standardized administration of the evaluation, evaluators must thoroughly understand the following items:

(1) *Evaluation Design.* Each event evaluates specific supporting missions or collective tasks within the overall scenario. The evaluators must know the evaluation design thoroughly to implement it correctly.

(2) *Training and Evaluation Outlines*. The evaluator must understand the task, the doctrine required to execute the task, the standards, and the methods used to measure a supporting mission and task accomplishment.

(3) *Evaluation System*. The evaluation control system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent, standardized manner and that the correct data are collected for the final evaluation. The evaluation control system includes the—

  (a) Evaluator's duties and responsibilities.

  (b) Evaluator organization apparatus. (An evaluator organization apparatus—usually a wiring diagram—ensures that the evaluator's coverage is sufficient and is in proper depth.)

  (c) Communication system. (Normally, a separate radio net and SOI are provided for the evaluators. The SOI include call signs and frequencies for the detachment, OC, role players, and OPFOR, as well as all evaluators.)

  (d) Evaluation data collection plan. (The plan states how data are to be reported, collected, consolidated, and briefed. The plan should include the time and location of the evaluator's meetings and when evaluators should debrief their counterparts.)

6-9. Selecting and Training the Observer-Controllers.

a. An accurate evaluation depends heavily on selecting OCs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them while conducting the evaluation. An OC fulfills the following functions during an evaluation:

(1) Controls the pace of the evaluation. (To control the pace of the evaluation, the OC injects items from the master scenario events list into the action.)

(2) Ensures safety. (The OC ensures that the ROE and other safety regulations are adhered to at all times.)

(3) Extends the span of control of an evaluator. (In this role, the OC merely reports what happened. He does not provide any assessment of unit performance.)

NOTE: A good example of this scenario is a convoy with five march serials. The evaluator could travel with the first march serial and receive reports from OCs traveling with each of the other march serials. The OCs could report the time their march serial crossed the start point, the number of vehicles that broke down during the march, the speed traveled, and so on. This procedure allows the evaluator to assess unit performance without using personnel equivalent in rank to the senior person in the element being evaluated.

(4) Performs as an evaluator. (When OCs act as evaluators, all the requirements for selecting and training evaluators apply.)

b. At the SFODB level, the number of required OCs varies, depending on the technique of the evaluation, the complexity of the exercise, and the use of the required control center. Regardless of the evaluation organization employed, OCs must know the SFODB's missions, organization, equipment, and doctrinal employment. Ideally, OCs should be at least equal in rank to the staff member being evaluated. They should have previous experience in the duties of the position being evaluated.

c. OC training focuses on providing OCs a general understanding of the overall evaluation, on providing each OC a detailed understanding of specific duties and responsibilities, and on building a spirit of teamwork. OC training should include—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives.

    (2) The unit METL and how it is linked to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this ARTEP MTP.

    (3) The OC team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

    (4) Detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items.

    (5) A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the OC's folders.

    (6) The OC communication and C^2 system.

    (7) Safety procedures.

    (8) Evaluation data collection plan and procedures.

    (9) AAR procedures and techniques.

d. The OCs perform a talk-through of the entire evaluation. The evaluation team war-games all items of the master events list in the order of their occurrence. The OCs review the objectives of each team member to identify responsibilities and anticipated problems.

e. The senior OC supervises the operation of the team. He provides team leadership and focuses his efforts on assuring evaluation personnel fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan. He performs the following functions:

    (1) Resolves problems.

    (2) Synchronizes the efforts of team members.

    (3) Ensures close coordination among team members.

    (4) Holds periodic team coordination meetings.

    (5) Plans and orchestrates the unit AAR.

    (6) Conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-10. Selecting and Training the Opposing Force.

a. Selecting and training an OPFOR are crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. They provide one of the control measures that influence the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Although the same unit will not be the OPFOR each time, the evaluation will be more uniform and more effective when the OPFOR is well trained to a stated standard. The OPFOR for an SFODB exercise should replicate the most likely threat force the SFODB will encounter.

b. The OPFOR must receive thorough training and indoctrination in the following areas:

    (1) ROE.

    (2) Threat tactics.

    (3) OPFOR tasks and standards for each mission.

    (4) Evaluation scenario.

    (5) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.

    (6) Impact of SFODB personnel and equipment shortages.

c. The OPFOR should have sufficient strength, weapons, and equipment based on sound threat doctrine, yet provide a realistic indication of the SFODB's reaction. Sabotage or terrorism attacks in a probing or harassing action would be realistic.

6-11. Selecting and Training the Role Players.

a. Like the OPFOR, role players as well are important to the evaluation process. Likewise, selecting and training the role players are critical to the success of a standardized evaluation.

b. The role players for an SFODB exercise should replicate the most likely civilian personnel and inter-agency personnel an SFODB will encounter when operating in a specific area or in support of GP forces deployed in an FN.

c. The role players must receive thorough training and indoctrination in the following areas:

(1) Culture of the nation in which the scenario is executed.
(2) Political, economic, and social attributes of the nation in which the scenario is executed.
(3) Role player tasks and standards for each mission.
(4) Evaluation scenario.
(5) Impact of SFODB personnel and equipment shortages.

d. The role players should have sufficient strength and equipment to provide realistic interaction between the SFODB and the civilian populace, as well as other agencies and the supported unit.

6-12. Conducting the Evaluation.

a. The senior evaluator has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by the various individuals and elements that have been specifically selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

(1) The evaluators must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit. Their selection, training, and functioning has been covered earlier in this chapter.
(2) The OCs serve as the control elements for the evaluation. They will issue orders, receive reports, provide feeder information, and control the OPFOR. Their selection, training, and functioning has been covered earlier in this chapter.
(3) All exercise participants and supporting personnel have a continuing mission to ensure every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and advise their superiors of the situation.

b. The senior evaluator has overall responsibility for preparing and implementing the evaluation scoring system. He makes the final evaluation; however, the full team participates in this process. Their report reflects the SFODB's overall proficiency in accomplishing its wartime missions.

c. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit's performance on each METL task and all other collective tasks contained in the overall evaluation plan. The evaluators use the following steps to record the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs (Chapter 5) that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.
(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit's performance of each of the tasks.
(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure that is not performed to standard.
(4) Use the GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO and the task standard information from the T&EOs to record the unit's overall capability to perform the task.
(5) Record the GO/NO-GO rating for each collective task in the T&EO. Then, they use the evaluator's work sheet (Figure 6-2, page 6-2) to list these evaluated tasks.

d. The evaluators use other locally designed reports approved by the senior evaluator and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit's capability to perform its critical wartime mission IAW the established standards. The senior evaluator uses this information to assess the unit's overall final rating.

6-13. Planning, Preparing, and Conducting After-Action Reviews.

a. The AARs expand the value of an evaluation by providing direct feedback to unit members through involving them in the training diagnosis process and enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation and why. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning. The senior evaluator is responsible for the AAR process. He will coordinate the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through after-action phases.

b. The senior evaluator initiates the planning for AARs during the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the actual evaluation. He integrates the AARs into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. The senior evaluator selects and trains qualified evaluators in the AAR processes. In this phase, he also identifies potential AAR sites and needed equipment and supplies required to conduct the AAR.

c. Preparing for the AAR commences with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit perform its combat critical tasks, this phase includes the review of training objectives, orders, and doctrine. The senior evaluator completes the final AAR site selection and establishes times and attendance. After the AAR information is gathered from applicable evaluators, OCs, and unit personnel, the senior evaluator organizes and rehearses the AAR. He uses the following steps to prepare for the AAR:

(1) *Reviews Training Requirements and Objectives.* The training objectives are the focus of the discussion during the AAR. The OPLAN and/or OPORD included in the exercise design starts the actions to accomplish the objectives. The evaluator should be familiar with the training requirements and objectives to evaluate the tasks performed by the unit in a particular situation.

(2) *Observes the Exercise.* This step is an active process. The emphasis is on noting the actions that make the difference in the unit's success or failure. Since the OPORD and subsequent mission performance may identify important activities and checkpoints, the evaluator is present when these events occur. Therefore, during performance of supporting missions, the evaluator is present and in a position to observe the performance of the tasks.

(3) *Selects the Site and Assembles the Participants.* After the exercise, the senior evaluator selects a site for the AAR and assembles the participants. The senior evaluator selects a site that is as free as possible from outside distractions. He also ensures that the selected site can support any special requirements of the training aids to be used. This site should be close to the training area with space for the participants to gather in easy sight and hearing range of the AAR leader.

(4) *Debriefs the Evaluators.* While the staff is debriefing the unit, the senior evaluator debriefs the evaluators. He discusses the events of the exercise with the other evaluators to gain a complete understanding of what happened. Also, the senior evaluator reviews the major events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to the training objectives and their contribution to the outcome of the exercise. He selects and places in chronological order as many major events as possible to discuss in detail during the allotted time for the AAR.

d. The senior evaluator conducts the AAR at logical break points in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. Once the AAR participants are assembled, the AAR begins. The senior evaluator introduces the session with a statement of the AAR purpose and the ground rules and procedures. He restates the training/evaluation objectives. AARs are not critiques but a professional discussion of training events. The senior evaluator limits the number of teaching points to three or four key points to keep the AAR in focus and to prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(1) The SFODB commander and senior evaluator ensure all individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR if at all possible. As a minimum, they ensure that every unit or element that participated in the exercise is represented.

(2) The senior evaluator guides the discussion of major events in sequential order. Each major event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the exercise. In an effective AAR, the senior evaluator—

   (a) Avoids giving a critique or lecture.

   (b) Asks leading questions to guide the discussion.

   (c) Guides the discussion in a manner that ensures participants themselves openly discuss important lessons.

   (d) Has the unit members describe what happened in their own terms. They discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better. They do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions. Neither do they examine events that were not directly related to the major training objectives.

   (e) Focuses the discussion so that important operational lessons learned are explicit and reinforce learning.

   (f) Relates events to subsequent results.

   (g) Encourages the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points.

(3) The senior evaluator may have a private conversation with the SFODB commander regarding the unit's strengths and weaknesses and what can be done to improve the commander's and the unit's performance.

(4) The soldiers and leaders gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses. They become more proficient in training and performing their combat critical tasks.

NOTE: Within the constraints of the scenario developed by the implementing HQ, the senior evaluators may conduct intermediate AARs in the field.

GLOSSARY

Part I. Acronyms

AA	assembly area
AAR	after-action review
AC	Active Component
ADVON	advanced echelon
AOB	advanced operational base
AOR	area of responsibility
ARSOF	Army special operations forces
ARSOTF	Army special operations task force
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
BBS	brigade/battalion battle simulation
BCTP	battle command training program
BOS	Battlefield Operating Systems
C^2	command and control
C^3I	command, control, communications, and intelligence
CA	Civil Affairs
CBS	corps battle simulation
CCIR	commander's critical information requirement
CI	counterintelligence
CINC	commander in chief
CMF	career management field
CMO	civil-military operations
COA	course of action
COIN	counterinsurgency
COMSEC	communications security
CONPLAN	contingency plan
CONUS	continental United States
CP	command post
CPX	command post exercise
CS	combat support

CSM	command sergeant major
CSS	combat service support
CTC	combat training center
DA	Department of the Army; direct action
DOD	Department of Defense
DZ	drop zone
E&R	evasion and recovery
ECM	electronic countermeasures
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
FFL	friendly forces lines
FID	foreign internal defense
FM	field manual
FN	foreign nation
FOB	forward operational base
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FS	fire support
FTX	field training exercise
GPF	general purpose force
GPFC	general purpose force commander
HN	host nation
HQ	headquarters
HUMINT	human intelligence
IAW	in accordance with
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlespace
IR	information requirements
ISOFAC	isolation facility
JCM	joint conflict model
JRTC	Joint Readiness Training Center
JSOA	joint special operations area
JTLS	joint theater level simulation
KIA	killed in action
LNO	liaison officer
LZ	landing zone

MAPEX	map exercise
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
MEE	mission-essential equipment
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilians
MILES	multiple integrated laser engagement system
MITASKS	mission tasks
MOC	mission operations cell
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MQS	military qualification standards
MSB	mission support base
MTP	mission training plan
MUTA	multiple unit training assembly
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NBCWRS	nuclear, biological, and chemical warning and reporting system
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NEO	noncombatant evacuation operations
NLT	not later than
NTC	National Training Center
O&I	operations and intelligence
OA	operational area
OB	order of battle
OC	observer-controller
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OFS	officer foundation standards
OOTW	operations other than war
OP	observation post
OPCEN	operations center
OPCON	operational control
OPFOR	opposing force
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order

OPSEC	operations security
ORP	objective rally point
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
POI	program of instruction
PRC	population and resource control
PSYOP	psychological operations
PZ	pickup zone
RC	Reserve Component
Reg	Regulation
RFI	request for information
ROE	rules of engagement
RP	rally point
RSO	regional security officer
RZ	recovery zone
S3	operations and training officer
SATS	standard army training system
SF	Special Forces
SFOB	Special Forces operational base
SFOD	Special Forces operational detachment
SFODA	Special Forces operational detachment Alpha
SFODB	Special Forces operational detachment Bravo
SIGCEN	signal center
SIGINT	signals intelligence
SIMCEN	simulation center
SITMAP	situation map
SITREP	situation report
SO	special operations
SOC	special operations command
SOCCE	special operations command and control element
SOCOORD	special operations coordination element
SODARS	Special Operations Debriefing and Reporting System
SOF	special operations forces
SOI	signal operation instructions

SOMPF	special operations mission planning folder
SOP	standing operating procedure
SPTCEN	support center
SR	special reconnaissance
STANAG	standardization agreement
STP	soldier training publication
STX	situational training exercise
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TOC	tactical operations center
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TPFDD	time-phased force deployment data
TRADOC	Training and Doctrine Command
U.S.	United States
USAJFKSWCS	U.S. Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School
UW	unconventional warfare
WARNORD	warning order
XO	executive officer

Part II. Definitions

Active Component. That portion of the U.S. Army in which organizations consist of personnel on full-time duty in active military service of the United States.

after-action review. A method of providing feedback to the unit by involving unit members in the after-training diagnosis process to increase and reinforce learning. The AAR is structured around sequential exercise events. The AAR leader guides the training diagnosis process to help unit members identify errors in training and to seek solutions to training problems.

annual training. The minimal period of training Reserve members must perform each year to satisfy the training requirements associated with their Reserve Component assignment. (Joint Pub 1-02)

Army Training and Evaluation Program. The ARTEP is a DA publication providing guidance for training and evaluating units. It describes the collective tasks the unit must perform to accomplish its critical wartime missions and to survive on the battlefield. The ARTEP combines the training and evaluation process into one integrated function. The ARTEP is a training program, not a test. The primary purpose of external evaluation under this program is to diagnose unit requirements for future training.

assessment. An analysis of the effectiveness of a unit, an activity, or a force.

Battlefield Operating Systems. The major functions occurring on the battlefield and performed by the force to execute operations successfully. The seven systems are intelligence, maneuver, FS, mobility, air defense, CSS, and C^2. NBC must be integrated throughout each of the BOS.

battle focus. The process of deriving peacetime training requirements from wartime missions.

battle task. A task that must be accomplished by a subordinate organization if the next higher HQ is to accomplish a mission-essential task. Battle tasks are selected by a senior commander from the subordinate organization's METL.

Civil Affairs. The activities of a commander that establish, maintain, influence, or exploit relationships between the military forces and civil authorities, both government and nongovernment, and the civilian populace in a friendly, neutral, or hostile area of operations in order to facilitate military operations and consolidate operational objectives. Civil Affairs may include performance by military forces of activities and functions normally the responsibility of local government. These activities may occur prior to, during, or subsequent to other military actions. They may also occur, if directed, in the absence of other military operations. (Joint Pub 1-02)

civil-military operations. Activities in support of military operations that embrace the interaction of the military force and civilian authorities and foster the development of favorable emotions, attitudes, and behavior in neutral, friendly, or hostile groups.

Combat Training Center Program. An Army program established to provide realistic joint service and combined arms training in accordance with Army doctrine. It is designed to provide training units opportunities to increase collective proficiency on the most realistic battlefield available during peacetime. The four components of the CTC Program are the NTC, the Combat Maneuver Training Center, the JRTC, the BCTP.

combined training exercise. A training exercise conducted by military forces of more than one nation.

command post exercise. An exercise in which the forces are simulated, involving the commander, his staff, and communications within and between headquarters. (Joint Pub 1-02)

command training guidance. The long-range planning document published by the SF Group (Airborne) in the AC and RC to prescribe future training and related activities.

critical collective tasks. Those collective tasks identified during the front-end analysis that give an immediate, direct, or significant impact on the ability of a unit's success or survival on the battlefield.

critical wartime missions. Those missions, assigned or implied, that a unit must accomplish in wartime. They are identified during the front-end analysis as missions that are vital to the unit's success or survival on the battlefield.

deconflict. To reconcile or resolve a conflict in interests as in targeting.

exfiltration. The removal of personnel or units from areas under enemy control.

external evaluation. A measurement of a unit's proficiency against an established standard at a specific moment in time. Unit evaluations are conducted in strict accordance with the evaluation scenario, regardless of the unit's success or failure in accomplishing a specific task. The external evaluation is designed to be administered by the HQ two echelons above the evaluated unit. It is a tool for the appropriate chain of command echelon to determine proficiency in specific missions or tasks.

field training exercise. High-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises C^2 of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated OPFORs.

foreign nation support. Civil resources identification, negotiation, and procurement from available resources within an FN in support of the U.S. military mission during wartime, preparation for war, or peacetime.

host nation. A nation in which representatives or organizations of another state are present because of government invitation or international agreement. The term particularly refers to a nation receiving assistance relevant to its national security.

individual task. A unit of work or action accomplished by a single individual. It has identifiable start and end points and results in a measurable accomplishment or product.

infiltration. (1) The movement through or into an area or territory occupied by either friendly or enemy troops or organizations. The movement is made, either by small groups or by individuals, at extended or irregular intervals. When used in connection with the enemy, it infers that contact is avoided. (2) In intelligence usage, placing an agent or other person in a target area in hostile territory. Usually involves crossing a frontier or other guarded line. Methods of infiltration are black (clandestine), gray (through legal crossing point but under false documentation), white (legal). (Joint Pub 1-02)

intelligence requirements. Intelligence requirements are those items of information regarding the hostile, friendly, and uncommitted third party forces and their environment that need to be collected to meet the intelligence requirements of the commander.

joint doctrine. Fundamental principles that guide the employment of forces of two or more Services of the same nation in coordinated action toward a common objective. It is ratified by all four Services and may be promulgated by the Joint Chiefs of Staff.

joint operations. Operations carried out by two or more of the Armed Forces of the United States (Army, Air Force, Navy).

joint special operations area. That area of land, sea, and airspace assigned to a joint SO command to conduct SO.

leader task. An individual task (Skill Level 2 or higher), performed by a leader, that is integral to the performance of a collective task. A leader task generally involves planning, supervising, inspecting, reporting, managing, and similar actions.

logistics exercise. An exercise that concentrates on training tasks associated with the CSS BOS.

mission. The primary task assigned to an individual, unit, or force. It usually contains the elements of who, what, when, where, and the reasons therefore, but seldom specifies how.

mission-essential task. A collective task in which an organization must be proficient to accomplish an appropriate portion of its wartime missions.

mission-essential task list. A compilation of collective mission-essential tasks that must be successfully performed if an organization is to accomplish its wartime mission.

mission training plan. A descriptive training document that provides the unit (battalion, company, platoon, and equivalent TOE units) a clear account of "what" and "how" to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency. It is designed to identify and elaborate on critical wartime missions in terms of comprehensive detailed T&EOs and to provide exercises and other related training management aids to assist field commanders in the planning and execution of effective unit training.

MTP preparing or proponent agency. Any school, center, agency, or command responsible for input or the development of an MTP.

multiechelon training. The simultaneous conduct of different exercises by a unit or the training of different tasks by elements of the unit. Multiechelon training occurs whenever collective training is being conducted. Any time training above soldier level is going on, multiechelon training is being done.

multiple unit training assembly. A training assembly that consists of more than one 4-hour session. For example, a MUTA-4 consists of at least 8 hours training on Saturday and Sunday, for a total of 16 or more hours of training.

national intelligence. Integrated departmental intelligence that covers the broad aspects of national policy and national security, is of concern to more than one department or agency, and transcends the exclusive competence of a single department or agency.

national objectives. Those fundamental aims, goals, or purposes of a nation—as opposed to the means for seeking these ends—toward which a policy is directed and efforts and resources of the nation are applied.

national policy. A broad COA or statements of guidance adopted by the government at the national level in pursuit of national objectives.

objectives. Concrete, measurable steps, or milestones, usually taken in sequence to achieve a goal.

observer-controller. An individual tasked to evaluate training and to provide administrative control and constructive feedback to participants during a training exercise.

priority intelligence requirements. PIR are the highest intelligence requirements personally approved by the commander. They are normally hostile capabilities or COAs, or characteristics of the OA, that could decisively impact on the commander's tactical or operational decisions.

Psychological Operations. Planned operations to convey selected information and indicators to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign governments, organizations, groups, and individuals. The purpose of Psychological Operations is to induce or reinforce foreign attitudes and behavior favorable to the originator's objectives. (Joint Pub 1-02)

quarterly training guidance. An AC training management document published at each level from battalion to division that addresses a 3-month planning period. The quarterly training guidance adjusts, as required, and further develops the training guidance contained in long-range plans, including specific training objectives for each major training event.

Reserve Component. Individuals and units assigned to the Army National Guard or the U.S. Army Reserve who are not in active service but are subject to call to active duty.

security assistance. Group of programs authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, and the Arms Export Control Act of 1976, as amended, or other related statutes by which the United States provides defense articles, military training, and other defense-related services, by grant, credit, or cash sales, in furtherance of national policies and objectives. (Joint Pub 1-02)

situational training exercise. A mission-related, limited exercise designed to train one collective task, or a group of related tasks or drills, through practice.

special operations. Actions conducted by specially organized, trained, and equipped military and paramilitary forces to achieve military, political, economic, or psychological objectives by nonconventional military means in hostile, denied, or politically sensitive areas. They are conducted in peace, conflict, and war, independently or in coordination with operations of GPFs. Politico-military considerations frequently shape SO, requiring clandestine, covert, or low-visibility techniques, and oversight at the national level. SO differ from conventional operations in degree of risk, operational techniques, mode of employment, independence from friendly support, dependence on detailed operational intelligence, and indigenous assets. (USCINCSOC)

threat. The ability of an enemy to limit, neutralize, or destroy the effectiveness of a current or projected mission, organization, or item of equipment. (TRADOC Reg 381-1)

training. The instruction of personnel to increase their capacity to perform specific military functions and tasks individually and collectively.

training and evaluation outline. A summary document prepared for each training activity that provides information on collective training objectives, related individual training objectives, resource requirements, and applicable evaluation procedures.

training management. The process used by Army leaders to identify training requirements and subsequently plan, resource, execute, and evaluate training.

training resources. Those resources (human, physical, financial, and time) used to support training. They may be controlled by an organization or externally controlled by a HQ that allocates their use to units as required.

training schedule. A document prepared at company level that specifies the who, what, when, and where of training to be conducted by the unit.

training strategy. The method used to attain desired levels of training proficiency on mission-essential tasks.

U.S. country team. The senior, in-country, United States coordinating and supervising body, headed by the chief of the U.S. diplomatic mission, usually an ambassador, and composed of the senior member of each represented U.S. department or agency. (Joint Pub 1-02)

REFERENCES

SOURCES USED

These publications are sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication.

Joint Publications

Joint Pub 1-02. *Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.* 23 March 1994.

Army Publications

AR 380-5. *Department of the Army Information Security Program.* 25 February 1988.

AR 380-67. *The Department of the Army Personnel Security Program.* 9 September 1988.

FM 3-3. *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance.* 16 November 1992. (Change 001, 29 September 1994.)

FM 3-4. *NBC Protection.* 29 May 1992. (Change 02, 21 February 1996.)

FM 3-5. *NBC Decontamination.* 17 November 1993.

FM 3-19. *NBC Reconnaissance.* 19 November 1993.

FM 3-100. *Chemical Operations, Principles, and Fundamentals.* 8 May 1996.

FM 7-8. *Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad.* 22 April 1992.

FM 8-10-6. *Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 31 October 1991.

FM 20-11-1. *Military Diving* (Volume 1). 30 October 1995.

FM 25-100. *Training the Force.* 15 November 1988.

FM 25-101. *Battle-Focused Training.* 30 September 1990.

FM 31-20. *Doctrine for Special Forces Operations.* 20 April 1990.

FM 33-1. *Psychological Operations.* 18 February 1993.

FM 34-1. *Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 27 September 1994.

FM 34-3. *Intelligence Analysis.* 15 March 1990.

FM 34-36. *Special Operations Forces Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations.* 30 September 1991.

FM 34-130. *Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield.* 8 July 1994.

FM 41-10. *Civil Affairs Operations.* 11 January 1993.

FM 55-30. *Army Motor Transport Units and Operations.* 27 June 1997.

FM 57-220. *Static Line Parachuting Techniques and Training.* 19 August 1996.

FM 90-8. *Counterguerrilla Operations.* 29 August 1986.

FM 100-5. *Operations.* 14 June 1993.

FM 100-20. *Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict.* 5 December 1990.

FM 100-25. *Doctrine for Army Special Operations Forces.* 12 December 1991.

FM 101-5. *Staff Organization and Operations.* 31 May 1997.

FM 101-5-1. *Operational Terms and Symbols.* 21 October 1985.

TC 31-350. *Combined Arms Training Strategy for Special Forces, Psychological Operations, and Civil Affairs Units.* 8 March 1994.

CGSC ST 100-9. *The Command Estimate Process*. August 1992.

Special Operations Coordination Element (SOCOORD) Handbook. January 1992.

Special Operations Command and Control Element (SOCCE) Handbook. February 1994.

STP 21-1-SCMT. *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (Skill Level 1)*. 1 October 1994.

STP 21-24-SCMT. *Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Levels 2/3/4*. 1 October 1992.

STP 31-18II-MQS. *Military Qualification Standards II Special Forces (18) Company Grade Officer's Manual*. 18 September 1991.

STP 31-18-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual, CMF 18, Special Forces Basic Tasks, Skill Level 3/4*. 25 September 1997.

STP 31-18B34-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 18B, Special Forces Weapons Sergeant, Skill Levels 3/4*. 5 October 1990.

STP 31-18C34-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 18C, Special Forces Engineer Sergeant, Skill Levels 3/4*. 5 October 1990.

STP 31-18D34-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 18D, Special Forces Medical Sergeant, Skill Levels 3/4*. 3 October 1995.

STP 31-18E34-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 18E, Special Forces Communications Sergeant, Skill Levels 3/4*. 20 September 1994.

STP 31-18F4-SM-TG. *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 18F, Special Forces Assistant Operations and Intelligence Sergeant, Skill Level 4*. 20 September 1994.

DOCUMENTS NEEDED

These publications must be available to the intended users of this publication.

Department of Defense Publications

DOD 5500.7-R. *Standards of Conduct*. August 1993.

Joint Publications

Joint Pub 3-05.3. *Joint Special Operations Operational Procedures*. 25 August 1993.

Army Publications

AR 310-25. *Dictionary of United States Army Terms (Short Title: AD)*. 21 May 1986.

AR 381-10. *U.S. Army Intelligence Activities*. 1 July 1984.

AR 530-1. *Operations Security (OPSEC)*. 3 March 1995.

AR 570-9. *Host Nation Support*. 9 October 1990.

AR 611-75. *Personnel Selection, Qualification, and Classification Management of Army Divers*. 2 December 1994.

ARTEP 31-805-MTP. *Mission Training Plan for the Special Forces Group and Battalion*. 11 August 1995.

DA Pamphlet 710-2-1. *Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)*. 1 January 1982.

FORSCOM Reg 55-1. *Unit Movement Planning*. 1 October 1995.

FM 3-3. *Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance*. 16 November 1992. (Change 001, 29 September 1994.)

FM 3-5. *NBC Decontamination*. 17 November 1993.

FM 3-100. *Chemical Operations, Principles, and Fundamentals*. 8 May 1996.

FM 7-10. *The Infantry Rifle Company*. 14 December 1990.

FM 8-10-6. *Medical Evacuation in the Theater of Operations: Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 31 October 1991.

FM 9-43-1. *Maintenance Operations and Procedures.* 21 February 1997.

FM 10-23. *Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management.* 18 April 1996.

FM 19-30. *Physical Security.* 1 March 1979.

FM 20-3. *Camouflage.* 14 November 1990.

FM 21-10. *Field Hygiene and Sanitation.* 22 November 1988.

FM 21-26. *Map Reading and Land Navigation.* 7 May 1993.

FM 21-75. *Combat Skills of the Soldier.* 3 August 1984.

FM 22-9. *Soldier Performance in Continuous Operations.* 12 December 1991.

FM 22-100. *Military Leadership.* 31 July 1990.

FM 24-1. *Signal Support in the AirLand Battle.* 15 October 1990.

FM 25-100. *Training the Force.* 15 November 1988.

FM 25-101. *Battle-Focused Training.* 30 September 1990.

FM 31-19. *Military Free-Fall Parachuting Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures.* 18 February 1993.

FM 41-10. *Civil Affairs Operations.* 11 January 1993.

FM 44-8. *Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack.* 30 December 1981.

FM 44-80. *Visual Aircraft Recognition.* 30 September 1996.

FM 55-12. *Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft.* 10 November 1989. (Change 001, 28 December 1992.)

FM 57-220. *Static Line Parachuting Techniques and Training.* 19 August 1996.

FM 90-8. *Counterguerrilla Operations.* 29 August 1986.

FM 100-5. *Operations.* 14 June 1993.

FM 100-20. *Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict.* 5 December 1990.

FM 100-25. *Doctrine for Army Special Operations Forces.* 12 December 1991.

FM 101-5. *Staff Organization and Operations.* 31 May 1997.

TC 12-17. *Adjutant's Call/The S1 Handbook.* 17 March 1992.

TC 31-24. *Special Forces Air Operations.* 9 September 1988.

TC 31-25. *Special Forces Waterborne Operations.* 3 October 1988.

TM 38-250. *Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments.* 25 November 1994.

READINGS RECOMMENDED

These readings contain relevant supplemental information.

Joint Pub 3-0. *Doctrine for Joint Operations.* 1 February 1995.

Joint Pub 3-05. *Doctrine for Joint Special Operations*. 28 October 1992.

Joint Pub 3-05.5 *Joint Special Operations Targeting and Mission Planning Procedures*. 10 August 1993.

Joint Pub 3-57. *Doctrine for Joint Civil Affairs.* 21 June 1995.

QUESTIONNAIRE

ARTEP MISSION TRAINING PLAN
USER FEEDBACK

MTP Number _____   Date _____

MTP Title _____

User feedback is an important link in the process of improving training publications. Because we value your comments and recommendations, we have designed a questionnaire that should simplify the feedback process for you. Please take a moment to complete this questionnaire; then, mail it to the address indicated on the last page of this questionnaire.

The following questions pertain to you.

1. What is your position? _____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. What is your component?

    __ AC

    __ RC

4. What is your unit?

    __ CONUS

    __ SOCEUR

    __ WESTCOM

    __ SOUTHCOM

    Other (Identify). _____

5. How long have you served in this unit? _____

The following questions are about the MTP in general.

6. How do you think this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

    a. Has made training worse.

    b. Has made training better.

    c. Has had no effect on training.

    d. Other (Specify). _____

7. How easy is the document to use when compared to other training products?

    a. More difficult.

    b. Easier.

    c. About the same.

    d. Other (Specify). _____

8. What chapter of this MTP was the most useful? _____

    the easiest to understand? _____

    the least useful? _____

    the most difficult to understand? _____

    a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.

    b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix.

    c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.

    d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.

    e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.

    f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations.

    g. Other (Specify). _____

The following questions pertain to the training exercises (CPXs, FTXs, and STXs).

9. The purpose of the exercises is to prepare the unit to accomplish its critical wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do the exercises accomplish their intended purpose?

    a. They do not prepare the unit at all.

    b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.

    c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.

    d. They help but only provide 51 to 80 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.

    e. They help but only provide 81 percent of my unit's training requirements.

    f. Other (Specify). _____

10. Do you recommend the addition or deletion of any exercise from this MTP? If so, explain.

    _____

    _____

    _____

    _____

    _____

11. What problem experienced with these exercises was the greatest? _____   second greatest? _____

    a.   Have too many pages.

    b.   Are hard to read and understand.

    c.   Need more illustrations.

    d.   Need more illustrations on how to set up the exercise.

    e.   Need more information on leader training.

    f.   Need more information on how to conduct the exercise.

    g.   Need more information on support and resources.

    h.   Need more information on normally attached elements.

    i.   Do not interface well with other training products, such as drills.

    j.   Other (Specify). _____

12. How many training exercises have you trained or participated in personally? _____

The following questions apply to Chapters 5 and 6 of the MTP.

13. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    a.   Leave it out all together.

    b.   Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.

    c.   Clarify how to use this chapter with test.

    d.   Define standards in less detail.

    e.   Define standards in more detail.

    f.   Establish standards for those elements that are normally attached in wartime.

    g.   Do not change; chapter is fine.

    h.   Other (Specify). _____

    _____
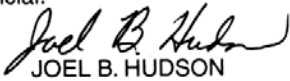
14. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluations?

    A.   Leave it out all together.

    B.   Clarify how to use this chapter.

    C.   Clarify how this chapter relates to the MTP.

    D.   Explain how to determine my unit's proficiency for its critical wartime mission.

    E.   Do not change; chapter is fine.

    F.   Other (Specify). _____

15. Additional comments.

    _____

    _____

ARTEP 31-807-MTP

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Please forward this completed form to the following address:

Commander
USAJFKSWCS
ATTN: AOJK-DT-SF
Fort Bragg, NC 28307-5000

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

DENNIS J. REIMER
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
04744

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121619 requirements for ARTEP 31-807-MTP.